WORKSHEET 1 : Subject Pronouns and Verb “To Be”
WORKSHEET 2 : Present Simple and Present Continuous
WORKSHEET 3 : Present Simple and Present Continuous
WORKSHEET 4 : Present Simple, Present Continuous, Simple Past
WORKSHEET 5 : Past form of verb “To Be”
WORKSHEET 6 : Past form of verb “To Be”
WORKSHEET 7 : Simple Past Tense
WORKSHEET 8 : Simple Past and Past Continuous
WORKSHEET 9 : Simple Past and Past Continuous
WORKSHEET 10 : Present Perfect Tense
WORKSHEET 11 : Present Perfect Tense vs Present Perfect Continuous
WORKSHEET 12 : Simple Past vs Present Perfect Tense / Present Perfect Tense vs Present Perfect Continuous
WORKSHEET 13 : Past Perfect Tense
WORKSHEET 14 : Past Perfect Tense / Past Perfect Continuous
WORKSHEET 15 : Going to
WORKSHEET 16 : Future Continuous
WORKSHEET 17 : Future Perfect / Future Perfect Continuous
WORKSHEET 18 : Future in the past
WORKSHEET 19 : Future Forms
WORKSHEET 20 : Tense Review
WORKSHEET 21 : Tenses (Rewrite or Combine)
WORKSHEET 22 : Correct Tense or Voice
WORKSHEET 23 : Passive Form
WORKSHEET 24 : Passive Form
WORKSHEET 25 : Passive Form
WORKSHEET 26 : Reported Speech
WORKSHEET 27 : Reported Speech
WORKSHEET 28 : Adjectives and Adverbs
WORKSHEET 29 : Adjectives ending –ing or -ed
WORKSHEET 30 : Conditionals
WORKSHEET 31 : Conditionals
WORKSHEET 32 : Wishes
WORKSHEET 33 : Comparatives and Superlatives
WORKSHEET 34 : Prepositions (at / in / on)
WORKSHEET 35 : Prepositions
WORKSHEET 36 : Relative Clause
WORKSHEET 37 : Relative Clause
WORKSHEET 38 : Modals
WORKSHEET 39 : Modals
WORKSHEET 40 : Used to / Would / Be used to
WORKSHEET 41 : Some / Any / Much / Many / A lot of / (a) Few / (a) Little
WORKSHEET 42 : Some- / Any- / No- with –body / -one / -thing / -where
WORKSHEET 43 : Tag questions
WORKSHEET 44 : Causatives
WORKSHEET 45 : Both … and / Neither … nor / Either … or / Not only … but also
WORKSHEET 46 : Articles
WORKSHEET 47 : Purpose : So that / to / In order to / In Case
WORKSHEET 48 : Reason and Result: because (of), as, since, so, as a result, therefore, …
WORKSHEET 49 : Contrast: although, even though, though, in spite of, despite, while, whereas, however
WORKSHEET 50 : Gerund or Infinitive
WORKSHEET 51: Gerund or Infinitive
WORKSHEET 52: Pronouns
WORKSHEET 53: Pronouns
WORKSHEET 54: Reflexive Pronouns
WORKSHEET 55: Certainty, Possibility, Impossibility and Advisability
WORKSHEET 56: Perfect Modals
WORKSHEET 57: Possessive “apostrophe –s-“ or “of “
WORKSHEET 58: SO do I / NEITHER do I
WORKSHEET 59: Enough / Too
WORKSHEET 60: Rewrite
WORKSHEET 1

SUBJECT: Subject Pronouns and Verb “To Be”:

A) Fill in the blanks using “HE, SHE, IT, WE, THEY”:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cat and horse</th>
<th>Mary</th>
<th>Tom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jack and I</td>
<td>books</td>
<td>sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You and Dave</td>
<td>plane</td>
<td>sunshine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheese</td>
<td>cactus</td>
<td>parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pamela</td>
<td>news</td>
<td>scissors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geese</td>
<td>flowers</td>
<td>piano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school</td>
<td>daughter</td>
<td>milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td>sugar</td>
<td>feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycle</td>
<td>Ann and Kate</td>
<td>tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td>mice</td>
<td>sky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shop</td>
<td>buses</td>
<td>papers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr. Green</td>
<td>brother-in-law</td>
<td>picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friendship</td>
<td>dolphin</td>
<td>The Riggs family</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

to be continued...

B) Fill in the blanks using “AM, IS, ARE, AM NOT, ISN’T, AREN’T”:

1. It ………….. an onion. (+)
2. Jasmine ……….. a student. (-)
3. We ……….friends. (+)
4. I ………. hungry. (-)
5. Mark ……….. 20 years old. (+)
6. A bee ……….. a big insect. (-)
7. Newsweek ……….. a magazine. (+)
8. I ……….. a professional football player. (-)
9. I know you. You ……… in my class. (+)
10. Cows ……….. insects. They ……….. mammals. (- / +)

11. İzmir ……….. a city. (+)
12. He ………. a postman. (+)
13. It ………. nine o’clock. (+)
14. Manhattan ……….. an island. (-)
15. Mr. Richards …… a lawyer. (+)
16. I ……….ill. I ……….. happy. (+ / -)
17. London ……….. a big city. (+)
18. Dave and Adrian ……….. sisters. They ……….. brothers. (- / +)
19. New York ……….. near to New Jersey. (+)
20. Susan and I ……….. teachers. We ……….. students. (- / +)

C) Fill in the blanks using “AM, IS, ARE, AM NOT, ISN’T, AREN’T”:

2. A lemon ……….. sweet. It ……….. sour.
3. Copper ……….. cheap. Diamonds ……….. expensive.
4. Airplanes ……….. slow. They ……….. fast.
5. Ice cream and candy ……….. sweet.
7. My brother ……….. married. He ……….. single.
8. I ……….. from Turkey. I ……….. from Canada.
10. Mariah … a beautiful girl. She ……….. ugly.
D) Rewrite the sentences by using “IS, ISN’T, AM, AM NOT”:

1. London aren’t a country. ....London isn’t a country............
2. The United States aren’t a city. ........................................
3. An elephant am not a small animal. ....................................
4. English and Turkish isn’t sister languages. ................................
5. Mercedes aren’t a bike. ............................................................
6. Is I a student ? ........................................................................
7. Mrs. Stuart aren’t a poor woman. ...........................................
8. Cigarettes isn’t good for people. ..............................................
9. The North Pole am not hot. ......................................................
10. Simon are from United Kingdom. ...........................................

E) Complete this postcard by using “AM, IS, ARE, AM NOT , ISN’T,AREN’T”:

Hello! 
My name ....is..... Jack, and this ....is... Sue. 
She ....... my sister. Sue ....... twelve years old and I ...... sixteen. 
We ....... adults. We ....... students. We ....... Canadians. We ......... Americans. 
We ........... from Chicago. Chicago ........... in the United States. 

Best regards, 
Jack

F) Write short sentences:

Example: 
(Chris, 9, student, short, not Chinese) 
.....Chris is nine years old. He is a student. He is short. He isn’t Chinese..........

1. (Leonard and Mike, 25, firemen, tall, American) ..........................................................
2. (Patty and Brian, 12, not electrician, short, not Turkish children) ..................................
3. (Natalie and I, nurse, not tall, French) ...........................................................................
4. (Mark, 19, accountant, short, British) ...........................................................................
5. (Cengiz, 23, lieutenant, not blonde, Turkish) .................................................................

G) Build up sentences:

1. Mike / drummer (-) ....Mike isn’t a drummer ........................................
2. Charlie and Chris / policemen(+) .................................................................
3. Danny and Rick / singers (-) ..............................................................................
4. Salem and Lucky / puppies (+) ..............................................................................
5. Rome / London / cities (+) ..............................................................................
H) Choose the best answer:

1. Maggie and Carol …………. good friends.
   a) am  b) are  c) is  d) isn’t

2. Sue ……… a science teacher.
   a) are not  b) is  c) are  d) am

3. Mark Steven ……… a student at Kennedy High School. It ……… an old school.
   a) am / is  b) are / is  c) is / am  d) is / is

   a) is / am  b) are / is  c) am / is  d) is / are

5. You and I ……… at the same age.
   a) am  isn’t  c) are  d) is

I) Change the sentences into questions:

Example:  I am an engineer.  .......Am I an engineer?........

1. You are ill. .................................................................
2. Linda is a pretty girl. ..............................................
3. Belinda is a singer. .................................................
4. Nick is an actor. ....................................................
5. We are good friends. ..............................................
6. He is an officer. ....................................................
7. It is an eraser. .......................................................  
8. You and Eddie are partners. ...................................
9. Rosie is angry. ......................................................
10. Jack and I aren’t good swimmers. ..........................

J) Give a short and a long answer:

Example:  

Is it a car?  ...No, it isn’t.
What is it?  ...It is a house.......  

1)  Is it a fish?  ..................  8)  Is it Saturn?  .................
What is it?  ................

2)  Is it a river?  ..................  9)  Is it a mountain?........
What is it?  ................
3) Is it a radio? …………………….
What is it? ………………………

4) Are these tomatoes? …………
What are they? ……………………

5) Are these pencils? ……………
What are they? ……………………

6) Is it a school bus? ……………
What is it? ………………………

7) Is it a horse? ………………….
What is it? ………………………

K) Give long answers:

Example: Are you a scientist? ………Yes, I am a scientist.………..

1. Are you a student? Yes, ……………………………………………
2. Is Tom in the park? No, ……………………………………………
3. Is it a poetry book? Yes, ……………………………………………
4. Are Mary and John friends? Yes, …………………………………
5. Am I an executive? No, ……………………………………………
6. Is Thomas fifteen years old? Yes, …………………………………
7. Are your earrings expensive? No, …………………………………
8. Is ice cream hot? No, ……………………………………………
9. Are lemons yellow and sour? Yes, ………………………………
10. Are Andy and Jack girls? No, …………………………………

L) Build up questions and give answers:

Example: engineer / William Is William an engineer? Yes, he is an engineer. (+)

1. good rider / Steve …………………….? …………………………………(+)
2. lazy students / Mark and Lucy …………………….? …………………………………(-)
3. soup / hot ………………………………? …………………………………(+)
4. the baby / asleep ………………………………? …………………………………(-)
5. basketball team / L.A. Lakers ………………………………? …………………………………(+)

M) Answer these questions:

1. Are trees green or gray? ……………………………………………
2. Are clouds brown or white? ……………………………………………
N) Read the passage and answer the questions:

Sophia: I am Sophia Berger. Are you Jordan Turner?
Jordan: Yes, I am. Are you English?
Sophia: Hector is. I am French. Are you from the United States?
Jordan: Yes, I am. Hector, are you from London?
Hector: Yes, I am. Are you from California?
Jordan: No, I am from New York City. Is London a big city?
Hector: Yes, it is a big city. Sophia, are you from Lyon?
Sophia: Yes, I am from Lyon.
Hector: Is Lyon near Florence?
Sophia: No, it isn’t. Florence is in Italy.
Hector: Oh, isn’t it in France? I am a real fool.
Jordan: No, Hector. Of course you are not a fool! Are you and Sophia students?
Hector: I am a student. She is an actress in France. We are tourists in the United States.
Sophia: Are you a student, Jordan?
Jordan: No, I am not a student. I’m a lawyer. I am on a holiday.

* Give long answers. If the answer is negative, then give the right answer:

Example: Is Sophia from Paris? …No, she isn’t……. She is from Lyon………………

1. Is Jordan from California? …………………………………………………………………
2. Is Florence in Italy? ………………………………………………………………………
3. Are Sophia and Hector students?
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………………
4. Is Hector from Manchester?
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………………
5. Is Sophia a dancer?
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

Write True or False:

1. ……T… Hector is English. 6. …F Sophia is from the United States.
2. …….. Hector isn’t from Manchester. 7. …… Jordan is from New York City.
3. ……… London is not a big city. 8. ……. Florence is in Italy.
4. …….. Hector is a student. 9. …….. Jordan is a teacher.
5. …….. Sophia is an actress in London. 10. ……. Sophia and Hector are tourists.
A) Read the paragraph and answer the questions:

Brian is a doctor. He looks after sick people. He usually gets up at 6.00 o’clock. Today he is late, it is 6.30 and he is still in bed. He usually goes to work by train but today he is driving to work. He arrives at work at 6.30 every morning but it is 7.30 now and he is still driving.

It’s 12.00 o’clock now. He always has his lunch at 12.00 but today he isn’t having lunch at 12.00, he is looking after his sick patients. It is half past seven now, Brian is watching TV. He usually watches TV at half past seven because his favorite programme starts at half past seven. Brian has his dinner at 8.30 everyday and he is having dinner now.

It is 24.00 now Brian is going to bed. He always goes to bed at 24.00.

1. What does Brian do? 6. When does he always have his lunch?
2. What time does he usually get up? 7. What is he doing at 12.00 today?
3. How does he usually go to work? 8. Why does he usually watch TV at 7.30?
4. Why is he driving to work today? 9. What time does he go to bed?
5. What time does he arrive at work everyday? 10. What time is he going to bed now?

B) Fill in the blanks with PRESENT CONTINUOUS or SIMPLE PRESENT:

1. The children …………………………… (play) outside now.
2. She usually …………………………. (read) the newspaper in the morning.
3. I ………………………….. (do) my homework now.
4. I ……………………….. (eat) my dinner now.
5. ………………………… (you / want) a pizza?
6. They ……………………….. (watch) TV now.
7. I ……………………….. (not / like) spaghetti.
8. The baby ………………………. (sleep) now.
9. My mother usually …………………….. (cook) dinner in the evening.
10. He ………………………. (write) a letter to his pen-friend every month.
11. She ………………………. (not / like) football.
12. Mary ………………………….. (listen) to music now.
13. Tom usually ……………………..(drink) coffee, but he …………………….. (drink) tea now.
14. We …………………………. (go) to the disco tonight.
15. …………………………… (he / go) to work by bus everyday.
C) Read the questions & answers about ALAN and ask and answer about JUDITH.

Questions: ALAN

1. What does Alan do?
1. Alan’s a lorry driver.
2. How old is Alan?
2. He’s twenty-five years old.
3. How many days a week does he work?
3. He works five days a week.
4. What time does he get up?
4. He gets up at six o’clock every day.
5. What does he eat for breakfast?
5. He eats an enormous breakfast.
6. What does he drink?
6. He drinks two cups of tea.
7. What does he do after breakfast?
7. Then he kisses his wife.
8. What time does he leave for work?
8. He leaves for work at half past six.
9. Where does he have lunch?
9. He has lunch in a transport café.
10. What time does he come home?
10. He comes home at five o’clock.
11. Where does he go in the evening?
11. In the evening he goes to the pub.
12. What time does he go to bed?
12. He goes to bed at ten o’clock.

Questions: JUDITH

1. ......................................................... 1. secretary
2. ......................................................... 2. 18
3. ......................................................... 3. 5 days a week.
4. ......................................................... 4. 7.30
5. ......................................................... 5. cornflakes
6. ......................................................... 6. orange-juice
7. ......................................................... 7. parents
8. ......................................................... 8. 8.15
9. ......................................................... 9. in the canteen
10. ......................................................... 10. home / 5.30
11. ......................................................... 11. evening classes
12. ......................................................... 12. eleven o’clock

D) Fill in the chart for yourself. Then look at the example. Choose and write TEN sentences from the chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Always</th>
<th>Usually</th>
<th>Often</th>
<th>Sometimes</th>
<th>Never</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>Tom</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>Tom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drink fizzy drinks</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy fast food</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play tennis</td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat sweets</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch TV in the evenings</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save money</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen to cassettes</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play computer games</td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: Tom always drinks fizzy drinks.

1. ............................................................
2. ............................................................
3. ............................................................
4. ............................................................
5. ............................................................
E) Now ask questions about the CHART:

Example: How often does Tom buy fast food? He usually buys fast food.

Does Tom play tennis? No, he doesn’t play tennis.

1. He always watches TV.
2. He sometimes plays tennis.
3. No, he doesn’t save money.
4. Yes, he usually listens to cassettes.
5. He often plays computer games.
6. Yes, he always drinks fizzy drinks.
7. He usually eats sweets.

F) Complete the sentences with SIMPLE PRESENT or PRESENT CONTINUOUS:

1. Susan usually ………………. (go) to school by bus, but now she ……………… (go) to school by train.
2. Mary often ……………….. (read) in bed, but today she is very tired and she ……………. (not / read).
3. The boys usually ……………… (ride) their bikes to school. They ……………… (like / ride) their bikes. They …………… (be) very naughty boys. They always ………………. (go) to school late. Today their teacher ……………… (be) very angry, because they ……………….. (be) late again.
4. Mary ……………….. (like / eat) sweets. Every morning she ………………. (have) coffee with a lot of sweets and chocolate. For lunch she and her friends often ……………… (eat) sweets or ice-cream. She ……………………… (not / like / eat) fruit or vegetables. She …………………. (eat / never) eggs or cheese. Today she ………………… (be) sick. She …………………. (sleep) in her room now.

G) Use a preposition ( ON, IN, AT, BY ) in each blank:

a. Jane goes to work ………………. bus.
b. My birthday is ………………. March.
c. We are going to meet ………………. 4:00 p.m.
d. Students must go to school ………………. weekdays.
e. Do you do play tennis ………………. the weekend?
f. His birthday is ………………. November 5th.
g. We have art lesson ………………. Mondays.
H) Read the text carefully and answer the questions:

Right now I am looking at a picture of Barbara. She is not at home in the picture. She is at the park. She is sitting on a bench. She is eating her lunch. Some boys and girls are running on a patch in the park. A squirrel is sitting on the ground in front of Barbara. The squirrel is eating a nut. Barbara is watching the squirrel. She always watches squirrels when she eats her lunch in the park. Some ducks are swimming in the pond in the picture, and some birds are flying in the sky. A policeman is riding a horse. He rides a horse in the park every day. Near Barbara, a family is having a picnic. They go on a picnic every week.

a. Where is Barbara in the picture?

b. What is she doing?

c. What is the squirrel doing in the picture?

d. What does Barbara always do when she has lunch in the park?

e. What are the ducks doing?

f. How often does the policeman ride his horse?

g. How often does the family have a picnic at the park?

I) Write a verb in each blank. Use the correct forms of the VERBS:

1. Can you ………………………… a motorbike?
2. Tim can ………………………… the guitar?
3. Sam is …………………………. milk at the moment?
4. “Who is that lady?”
5. “I don’t …………………….”
6. Emma can ……………………… Spanish and German, but her sister can’t.
7. I’m …………………………. my homework now.
8. “……………………….. your name, please.”
10. Excuse me. Can I ………………………… you a question?
11. Please go to the supermarket and ……………………… some cheese.
12. He is ………………………… water now because he is thirsty.
13. Every weekend they ………………………… their thirsty.
14. Listen! Jack is ………………………… a song.
15. Can you ……………………… me, please? I can’t carry these bags.
16. My dog and his cat are ……………………… now. My dog doesn’t like cats.
17. There is a party in Ann’s house. They are playing music. and ………………………

J) Use the CORRECT TENSE:

1. Look! Jane ……………………… (sing) again. She often ……………………… (sing) this song.
2. My father ……………………….(have) a lot of work to do every weekend.
3. The girls ………………………………… (not / talk) now. All of them ……………………… (watch) a film.
4. ……………….. you ……………….. (like) watching TV?
5. He ………………………… (usually / go) at 9:00 o’clock, but this morning he ………………………… (leave) home late.
6. I ………………………… (visit) my grandparents every Friday. My sister ………………………… (often / visit) them.
7. The boys ………………………… (swim) in the pool now but they ………………………… (usually / swim) in the sea.
8. She ………………………… (write) a letter to her pen-friend at the moment.
9. They ………………………… (sometimes / have) lunch at work, but today they ………………………… (have) at a restaurant.
10. She can’t talk to you. She …………………………. (have) a shower.
11. “Where ………………………… Alex ………………………” “In France.”
12. Tom ………………………… (like / ride) a horse in his free times.
13. The children ………………………… (play) the piano and ………………………… (sing) a song at the moment.
15. What ………………………… (you / usually / do) at weekends?
16. Jane ………………………… (give) a party today because it ………………………… (be) her birthday.
17. The lesson ………………………… (start) at 9 o’clock every morning.
18. Adam is in his room now. He ………………………… (write) a letter to his pen-friend. He ………………………… (always / write) him a letter.

K) Answer the questions:

1. How often do you walk to school?
2. What do you do after school?
3. What can you eat in an Italian restaurant?
4. Where does a doctor work?
5. What are you going to do next Saturday?

L) Ask questions for the underlined words:

1. …………………………? George often has a bath.
2. …………………………? Mike eats corn-flakes for breakfast every morning.
3. …………………………? The teacher is writing some examples on the board.
4. …………………………? Tom is watching a film now.
5. …………………………? My parents never smoke cigarettes.
6. …………………………? Peter and Rob go to school by service bus.
7. …………………………? Sam is doing his homework in his room.
8. …………………………? I read two books every month.
9. ................................................................. ?
    I can’t understand Hans because I don’t know German.
10. ................................................................. ?
    No, Sally isn’t writing a letter now.

M) Write a question word in each blank (For example: When, How, Why, How many ..) and then match the questions with the answers:

1. ................. is your music lesson? a) Because, I’m hungry.
2. ................. is it? b) Fine.
3. ................. books are there in your bag? c) Germany.
5. ................. is your watch? e) In the garden.
6. ................. are you? f) In June.
7. ................. are the children? g) It is half past two.
8. ................. your father’s birthday? h) 5.
9. ................. do you want a sandwich? i) Tuesday.
10. ................. is she from? j) Six.

N) Build up sentences:

1. He / like watching TV / but / he / not / watch / at the moment / because / he / sleep //
2. What / Wendy / do / at the moment / ? // She / clean / her teeth / bathroom //
3. mother / can (-) / help me / now / because / she / cook / kitchen //
4. Where / your cousin / live / ? // She / live / Sydney / Australia //
5. Why / you / eat / sandwich / now / ? // Because / I / be / hungry //
6. Tim / usually / go / work / bicycle //
7. children / play / games / everyday //
8. My brother / can (-) / play / tennis / because / he / not / have / racket //
10. My parents / not / like / roller-skates / because / they / be / dangerous //
A) Read the paragraphs and answer the questions:

Hello! My name is Douglas Hunter. I’m a pilot for British Airlines. I fly planes. I am not working today. I am playing golf. It is my favorite sport.

1. What is his name?
2. What does he do?
3. What is he doing now?
4. What is his favorite sport?

He is Gordon Lester. He is a champion jockey. He rides racehorses, but he isn’t riding a racehorse now. He is dancing with his wife.

1. What is his name?
2. What does he do?
3. Is he a good jockey?
4. Where is he now?
5. What is he doing?
6. Who is he with?

They are Bob and Michael. They teach English in a school. They aren’t teaching now. They are in the pub. They’re talking and laughing.

1. Who are they?
2. Do they teach?
3. What do they teach?
4. Where are they now?
5. What are they doing now?

She is Rosalind Graham. She is a ballet dancer. She dances for Royal Ballet. She isn’t dancing now. She is having a bath.

1. What is her name?
2. What does she do?
3. Is she dancing now?
4. What is she doing?

B) Write DON’T, DOESN’T, ISN’T, AREN’T or AM NOT in the blank space in each sentence:

a. He isn’t listening to the radio right now.
b. He doesn’t listen to the radio every evening.
c. We …………………… watching a television program now.
d. We …………………… watch television every day.
e. They ………………… study their lessons after class.
f. They ………………… studying their lessons right now.
g. It …………………… raining very hard right at the moment.
h. It ...................... rain very much during the summer.
i. Mr. Johnson ...................... eating his lunch now.
j. Mr. Johnson ...................... always eat at that place.
k. I ...................... see any students in that room.
l. I ...................... hear anyone in the hall now.

C) Complete the sentences:

1. Every Monday my father ...................... because
   .................................................................

2. Linda usually ...................... but she ...................... today.
   .................................................................

3. I want to buy a ...................... because ......................
   .................................................................

4. My teacher often ...................... but today ......................
   .................................................................

5. At the moment the children ...................... they often
   .................................................................

D) Read the following text and answer the questions:

My name is Kate O’Hara. I live on a farm with my mother and father. I like it but I work very hard. Every morning I wake up at five o’clock and feed the horses. Then I can go back to the house. Mum makes breakfast at 5:30 and I’m not late for breakfast because I don’t like cold eggs. After breakfast I help dad for an hour. Then I have a shower and get ready for school. The school bus leaves at 8:15. I leave home at 8:00.

After school I can watch TV for an hour. Then we have our dinner. We have chicken for dinner but I hate it. I eat it because mum gets angry. After dinner I do my homework. Then I go out and feed the horses. I go to bed early because I’m always very tired at the end of the day.

1. Where does Kate live?
   .................................................................

2. What time does she get up every morning?
   .................................................................

3. Who makes breakfast every morning?
   .................................................................

4. Why isn’t she late for breakfast?
   .................................................................

5. When does she have a shower?
   .................................................................

6. What time does she catch the school bus?
   .................................................................

7. How long can she watch TV?
   .................................................................

8. What do they have for dinner?
   .................................................................

9. When does she do her homework?
   .................................................................

10. Why does she go to bed early?
   .................................................................
True or False:

1. She doesn’t like the farm.  _____________
2. Kate doesn’t work very hard.  _____________
3. Kate has a shower before 8:15.  _____________
4. Kate’s mother doesn’t like chicken.  _____________
5. After dinner Kate feeds the horses.  _____________

E) Complete the sentences using DO / DOES / AM / IS / ARE / HAVE GOT / HAS GOT:

1. ...................... the children want toy for their birthday?
2. Dazzle ..................... a new dress for the party.
3. When .................... your brother’s birthday?
4. How much ................ these glasses? “80.”
5. Mr. and Mrs. Jackson .................... two children.
6. .................... your uncle like chocolate?
7. .................... I your friend?
8. How much .................... your new tennis racket?

F) Circle the correct answer:

1. Look! Thomas is bringing / brings his little sister to class.
2. My older sister is often listening / often listens to pop music.
3. We are writing / write an exercise now.
4. Mmmm! Mum is making / makes a cake.
5. Our teacher is giving / gives us a test every month.
6. Listen! Dad is reading / reads a story to Ricky.
7. Mr. Michael usually is growing / grows roses in his garden.
8. They are building / build a new house on the hill now.
9. Maria is drinking / drinks milk every morning.
10. Look! Nick is running / runs down the hill.

G) Change the following sentences into POSITIVE, NEGATIVE and QUESTION form:

1. You know the answer.
   (-) ...........................................................................................................
   (?) ...........................................................................................................

2. He has breakfast at 8 o’clock.
   (-) ...........................................................................................................
   (?) ...........................................................................................................

3. Some schoolgirls don’t wear uniforms.
   (+) ...........................................................................................................
   (?) ...........................................................................................................

4. Does she cut her husband’s hair?
   (+) ...........................................................................................................
   (-) ...........................................................................................................

5. She does her homework everyday.
   (-) ...........................................................................................................
   (?) ...........................................................................................................
H) Supply PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE in the blanks:

1. He …………………………. (teach) his son to ride a bike.
2. A: Why ………………… Ann ……………………. (wear) her new dress?
   B: Because she ……………………………. (have) a party tonight.
3. Cindy usually does the shopping, but I ……………………………… (do) it today because she is ill.
4. She ……………………………. (not / work), she ………………………………. (swim) in the river.
5. A: ……………………. Tom ……………………… (clean) his shoes now?
   B: No, he ……………………………. He ………………………………….. (tidy) his room.
   A: Where is his brother?
   B: He is in the garden, he …………………………………. (water) the flowers.
JAMAICA is a large island in the Caribbean Sea. Nearly a million tourists visit the island every year to relax in the sun and swim in the clear blue sea.
For tourists, the island is a paradise, but for most Jamaican people life is hard. There are very few jobs, except in the tourist industry.
Jamaica is also famous for reggae music.

A) Chilli’s friend Della was on holiday in Jamaica. Read her letter to Chilli and complete it with the correct verbs.

* invited * stopped * talked * stayed * travelled * enjoyed
* didn’t sleep * didn’t get * watched * was * listened

Dear Chilli,

I had a fantastic holiday in Jamaica. It was hot and the sea was blue and lovely.

I …………………. by plane from London to Kingston. I really …………………. the flight. It was eight hours long but I …………………..at all because I …………………. so excited. During the flight I ………………….. to music, ………………….. a film and ……………… to the girl in the seat next to me.

I …………………… with my aunt and uncle in Kingston. They …………………. me on a trip to Montego Bay. We ………………….. at an Orchid Farm. It was brilliant. On my last night there I ………………….. to bed until there o’clock in the morning!

See you soon!

Love,
Della

B) Answer the questions:

1. Did she go to Jamaica?
2. How did she go to Kingston?
3. How was the weather?
4. What did she do on the plane?
5. Did she visit her grandparents?
6. Did she like the Orchid Farm?
7. When did she go to bed on her last night?
8. Where is Jamaica?
9. What do the tourists do in Jamaica?
10. How is the life for Jamaican people?

C) Complete these sentences in the PAST TENSE, using the correct verb:

* play        * enjoy        * watch       * listen         * talk          * phone
* stop        * walk         * travel        * like            * stay

I watched the late film on TV last night.

1. We really .................. the concert last night. It was great!
2. She .................. with friends in Brighton last summer.
3. Italy .................. very well in the last World Cup.
4. Her parents .................. by train from Shanghai to Moscow.
5. I .................. you four times last night but you were out.
6. We .................. along the beach yesterday. It was lovely.
7. She .................. the film but she didn’t like the music.
8. The men .................. work at exactly one o’clock.
10. They .................. to us about their trip to Madagaskar. It was very interesting.

D) Complete the conversation with WAS / WASN’T / WERE / WEREN’T.

A: Where were you last night? I phoned you but you ................ at home.
B: I ...............out with friends. We ............... at the Bluenote Café.
A: ............... Julia there?
B: No, she ............... Why?
A: Oh, I just wondered.
B: She ...............out with Nick. They ...............at the Oasis. I think.
A: No, they ............... .
B: How do you know?
A: Because I ............... there!

E) Complete the man’s statement with the PAST SIMPLE form of the verbs in brackets:

Last night I .................. (go) to my favorite restaurant in West Street. I .................. (leave) the restaurant at about 11 o’clock. It .................. (be) a warm evening and I .................. (decide) to walk along the beach.

Suddenly, I .................. (hear) a noise. I .................. (turn) and .................. (see) three boys aged about eighteen. One boy .................. (come) up to me and .................. (ask) me the time. When I .................. (look) down at my watch, he .................. (hit) me and I .................. (fall) to the ground. Another boy .................. (take) my wallet. I .................. (shout) for help. Then they .................. (run) away.
F) Complete the story. Use the verbs in the brackets:

Last year I went (go) on holiday. I (drive) to the sea with my friend. On the first day we (look) at the beautiful buildings and (eat) in lots of restaurants. The next day (be) very hot so we (drive) to the sea. We (leave) our clothes in the car and (sunbathe) and (swim) all day. At six o’clock we (walk) to our car, but the car (be) there. We (buy) some clothes and (go) to the Police Station. The police (be) nice and we (sleep) in the police station.

G) Make negative sentences (x) or questions (?) using the PAST TENSE:

Example: he / stay (x) in a hotel

He didn’t stay in a hotel.

you / learn (?) speak Italian when you were in Italy.

Did you learn to speak Italian when you were in Italy?

1. she / like (x) the film
2. I / use / (x) the school computer yesterday
3. they / arrive (?) home late yesterday
4. you / ask (?) her for Caroline’s address
5. he / enjoy (x) the concert in the park
6. we / talk (x) about school at all

H) Read the text. Write the questions below about Tamsin’s holiday:

Last September Tamsin went to Bali. She went by plane and stayed in a big hotel. It was very hot, so she swam every day. In the evenings she went to different restaurants, the food was very good. She met some nice people and every night she danced with them at the disco. She was happy because she wasn’t alone.

1. Where did she go? Bali.
2. ……………………………………………………………… Last September.
3. ……………………………………………………………… By plane.
4. ……………………………………………………………… In a big hotel.
5. ……………………………………………………………… It was very hot.
6. ……………………………………………………………… She swam.
7. ………………………………………………………………… Some nice people.
8. ………………………………………………………………… It was very good.
I) Match the questions with the answers:

1. When did you learn to drive a car? a. By bus.
2. What did you watch on television last night? b. The news.
3. What did you do last weekend? c. 6<sup>th</sup> September.
4. Who were you with at 4pm today? d. On Saturday I played tennis and on Sunday I slept.

5. When was the beginning of term? e. January.
7. What did you eat for breakfast this morning? g. John.
8. What was the month before last? h. Toast and coffee.

J) Read about Lucian and Estelle and write the questions:

Lucian and Estelle are from London, but they live in Madrid. They work for Opel, the car factory. Lucian and Estelle like swimming and cooking. They don’t have a car. They don’t like driving!

1. live / they / do / London? Do they live in London? …………
2. Madrid / do / live / they? ………………………………………
3. Ferrari / they / work / do? ………………………………………
4. work / Renault / do / they? ………………………………………
5. swimming / like / cooking / they / do? ………………………………………
6. swimming / they / like / traveling / do? ………………………………………
7. like / do / driving / they? ………………………………………

K) What does Ellie ask Carsten? Put the words in order to make questions:

Ellie: Sunday time What do get you up on? What time do you get up on Sunday? …………………

Carsten: Ten o’clock.
Ellie: you breakfast What do have for? ………………………………………………………

Carsten: Coffee, cheese and bread.
Ellie: morning you in do the What do? ………………………………………………………

Carsten: I play football in the park.
Ellie: do lunch When have you? ………………………………………………………

Carsten: At two o’clock.
Ellie: with Who lunch you do have? ………………………………………………………

Carsten: My parents.
Ellie: you afternoon What do do in the? ………………………………………………………

Carsten: I watch football on TV.
L) Fill in with PRESENT SIMPLE or PRESENT CONTINUOUS:

Father: Alice, what are you doing (you / do)?
Alice: I ……………………… (clean) the house. I usually ………………….. (do) my homework but today I ……………………… (not / go) to school.
Father: Where's your mum?
Alice: She ……………………… (make) a cake. She usually …………………….. (go) to the market but today my friends ……………………….. (come).

M) Fill in with PRESENT SIMPLE or PRESENT CONTINUOUS:

1) Sarah Star is a singer. She sings ………(sing) and ……………….. (dance) on TV. She …………………….. (drive) a red Mercedes. At the moment she is with Nick Pear. They …………………….. (eat) in a restaurant. Sarah …………………….. (drink) a cocktail and Nick …………………….. (talk) to the waiter.

2) Ann is a doctor. She …………………….. (work) in a hospital but today she ……………..(stay) at home. Now she …………………….. (cook) dinner. Her friends ……………………..(visit) her today. It …………………….. (be) her birthday.
SUBJECT: Past form of Verb “To Be“

A) Fill in the blanks. Use WAS / WERE:

1. Mary and Susan ...... were ........ ill yesterday.
2. The weather .................... very hot last Saturday.
3. The students .................... at the theater last night.
4. Betty .............................. in Germany last summer.
5. My brother and I .................. at the football stadium on Saturday.
6. .............................. it cold yesterday?

B) Put these sentences into the PAST. Use past form of verb “TO BE“:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TODAY</th>
<th>YESTERDAY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Example: I’m at home.</td>
<td>.... I was at home .........................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Jane and Michael are tired. .............................................
2. She’s in the park. ......................................................
3. It’s a sunny day. ......................................................
4. You’re late. ............................................................
5. They aren’t hungry. ...................................................
6. We aren’t at work. ....................................................
7. I’m thirsty. .............................................................
8. You aren’t at school. ..................................................
9. We’re at the cinema. ..................................................
10. Paula isn’t happy. ....................................................
11. Everyone is excited. ..................................................
12. I’m not afraid. ..........................................................

C) Choose WAS or WERE and circle it:

1. He was / were a policeman.
2. We was / were very happy.
3. Was / Were you happy?
4. They wasn’t / weren’t interested in.
5. I was / were at school.
6. It wasn’t / weren’t expensive.
7. Was / Were she your teacher?

D) Complete the text with WAS or WERE:

Interviewer: What ................. it like during the First World War, Bill?
Bill: It ................. a terrible time. I ................. a young man, so I .......... in the army. We ................. in Italy.
Interviewer: Where ................. your wife and children?
Bill: They ................. in London. That ................. dangerous too. There ........ bombs and there ................. not a lot of food. The children ................. very young and they ................. very frightened.
E) Are these statements TRUE or FALSE? Correct the FALSE statements using WASN’T or WEREN’T:

**Example:**
a) Bill was an old man during the First World War.
   **FALSE-** Bill wasn’t an old man during the First World War.

b) Bill was in the army. **TRUE**

c) Bill was in Poland. ...............................................................

d) Bill’s wife and children were in Italy. ...........................................

e) It was dangerous in London. ..................................................

f) There was a lot of food in London. ...........................................

g) The children were quite old. ..................................................

h) The children were frightened. ..................................................

F) Make questions about the text using WAS or WERE:

**Example:**
a) How old / Bill / during the First World War?
   *How old was Bill during the First World War?*

b) / Bill / in the army? ...............................................................

c) Where / Bill? .................................................................

d) Where / Bill’s wife and children? ...........................................

e) / It dangerous in London? ..................................................

f) / there bombs? .................................................................

g) / there a lot of food? ..........................................................

h) How old / the children? .....................................................

i) / the children frightened? ..................................................

G) Read the interview and answer the questions:

**Bill Jenkins is 100 today.**

Interviewer: Bill, I expect life is very different today than a hundred years ago. What **was** it like?

Bill : Yes, it is very different. Life was much quieter then. There are so many cars now. There weren’t any cars when I **was** a boy.

Interviewer: **Were** you happy as a child?

Bill : Oh yes, I **was** very happy, but I’m still happy now!

Interviewer: Tell me about your family.

Bill : Well, my father **was** a postman and my mother **was** a cook. We weren’t rich, but we weren’t poor either. There **were** five children. My brothers and sisters **were** all younger than me but I’m the only one still here.

1. Were there any cars when he was a boy?

2. Was he happy or sad when he was a child?

3. What was his mother’s job?

4. How many children were there in his family?

5. How old is Bill Jenkins?
H) Mary spent last weekend in Madrid. Ask her some questions using WAS or WERE:

Example: (your hotel / good?)  
....  Was your hotel good? ........

1. (your room / comfortable?)  
2. (the weather / nice?)  
3. (the streets / full of people?)  
4. (the shops / expensive?)  
5. (the city / exciting at night?)  
6. (the museums / interesting?)  
7. (the people / friendly?)  
8. (your flight / OK?)

I) George and Sally have been married for 50 years. They are talking about their first house. Use WAS or WERE and a word from the box to complete their conversation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>new</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>big</th>
<th>green</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: George: The house was warm.  
Sally : No, it ....was cold. ....

1. George: The garden was small.  
Sally : No, it ........................................

2. Sally : The neighbors were French.  
George: No, they ........................................

3. George: The living-room was red.  
Sally : No, it ........................................

4. Sally : Our first chairs were expensive.  
George: No, they ........................................

5. George: The kitchen was old.  
Sally : No, it ........................................

6. George: The local shops were good.  
Sally : No, they ........................................

J) Put WAS, WASN’T, WERE or WEREN’T in the gaps in these conversations:

1. Peter : .... Was ....... Paul at work today?  
Julie : No, he .................. in the office. I think he’s sick.

2. Henry : ............... you in South America last year?  
Steve : Yes, I .................. in Bolivia on business, and then my wife and I ............ in Brazil for a holiday.
3. Paula : Philip and I .............. at home in London last week. We .............. at Mike’s house in Cornwall. It was lovely there. Do you know Mike?

Jane : Yes, I .............. at Mike’s party in Oxford in the summer. .............. you there?

Paula : No, we weren’t there. Philip and I .............. in Portugal in the summer.

K) Make questions using WAS / WERE:

1. Jim / at home / last night. .......... Was Jim at home last night? .... ?
2. You / at school / on Monday. .................................................................?
3. David / here / yesterday. ................................................................. ?
4. the cinema / open / on Sunday. .................................................................?
5. Kate and Jane / late / yesterday. .................................................................?
6. you / in the football team / last year. .................................................................?
7. all your friends / at your party. ................................................................. ?
8. it / hot / last week. ................................................................. ?

L) Make negative sentences using WAS / WERE:

1. Kevin / at my party. ............... Kevin wasn’t at my party ............
2. Nick / in class yesterday. .................................................................
3. It / warm / yesterday. .................................................................
4. Tina and Jim / late. .................................................................
5. Etty / on the bus. .................................................................
6. We / at the match / yesterday. .................................................................
7. Our teachers / pleased with us. .................................................................
8. I / at the restaurant. .................................................................

N) Fill in the blanks using WAS (NOT) / WERE (NOT):

1. I’m here today but I ........ wasn’t ........ here yesterday.
2. Jennifer is tall now but she ......................... tall two years ago.
3. It is rainy today but it ......................... yesterday.
4. Mr. Smith is angry now but he ......................... an hour ago.
5. The shops are open today but they ......................... on Sunday.
6. My car is clean today but it ......................... yesterday.
7. My father isn’t at home now but he ......................... an hour ago.
8. The students are in class today but they ......................... last week.
9. It isn’t sunny now but it ......................... an hour ago.
10. We aren’t hungry now but we ......................... twenty minutes ago.
A) Complete the text with the correct form of TO BE:

Stan Laurel and Oliver Hardy …were….. two of the most popular film comedians of all time. They were born in 1890 and 1892 respectively.


Oliver Hardy …………….. English, he was from Georgia, USA.

Laurel and Hardy …………….. in their late 30s when they met. Their first film together …………….. Putting Pants on Philip (1927). They …………….. funny because they were so different. Laurel …………….. small and thin. Hardy …………….. big and fat. Their most famous films …………….. Way Out West (1937) and Blockheads (1938). They …………….. in any serious films, only comedies.

B) Use the text to help you write questions for the answers:

Example: Who was Oliver Hardy’s famous comic partner? 
Stan Laurel.

1. ………………………………………………………………………………
   In 1890 and 1892 respectively.

2. ………………………………………………………………………………
   Arthur Jefferson.

3. ………………………………………………………………………………
   England.

4. ………………………………………………………………………………
   No, he wasn’t. He was American.

5. ………………………………………………………………………………
   Putting Pants on Philip.

6. ………………………………………………………………………………
   Because they were so different.

C) Write questions and answers. Use the past tense of BE:

1. A: We had a nice holiday. 
   B: (you / with your whole family?) …….. Were you with your whole family?…
   A: (no / my daughter / in Montreal) …….. No, my daughter was in Montreal….

2. A: I bought these new shoes yesterday. 
   B: (they / on sale ?) ……………………………………………..
   A: (yes / they / only $25) ……………………………………………..

3. A: (you / at home / last night ?) ……………………………………………..
   B: (no / I / at the library) ……………………………………………..

4. A: (the guests / late for the party ?) ……………………………………………..
   B: (no / they / all on time) ……………………………………………..
A) Make questions and answers. Use THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS:

Example: (she / work / in Peru / this year?) (No, she / study / in Mexico)

Is she working in Peru this year? No. She’s studying in Mexico.

1. (you / study / English / at the moment?) (Yes, I / work / hard.)

………………………………………….. ………………………………….

2. (they / listen / to the radio?) (No, they / play / CDs.)

………………………………………….. ………………………………….

3. (Peter / wash / now?) (Yes, he / have / a bath.)

…………………………………………..

4. (they / live / in Madrid / at the moment?) (Yes, they / learn / Spanish.)

…………………………………………..

5. (David / sing / in a group / this year?) (No, he / work / in a restaurant.)

…………………………………………..

B) Write TRUE next to a correct sentence, and FALSE next to a wrong sentence:

Example: She’s liking pop music. FALSE

He’s learning German. TRUE

1. They’re enjoying the film. 6. She’s eating a banana.  
2. We’re loving ice-cream. 7. I’m feeling sick.  
3. She’s believing he’s right. 8. “Huge” is meaning “very big”. 
4. John’s thinking about my idea. 9. Mick is knowing Jane. 
5. He’s having lunch at the moment. 10. She’s hating classical music.

C) Complete this conversation. Use the verbs in brackets ( ) in the PRESENT CONTINUOUS:

Paul : Hi Steve! What are you doing?
Steve : …………………………………. (I / go) to the bank. What are you doing?
Paul : …………………………………. (I / shop). …………………………. (I / look) for a

new tennis racquet. ………………………. (I / play) a lot of tennis at the

moment, and I need a new racquet.
Steve : Where is Jackie? Do you know?
Paul : Yes. She isn’t in England at the moment. ……………….. (She / work)
in Germany for a month.
Steve : What …………………………………. (she / do) in Germany?
Paul : …………………………………...(She / sing) in a night-club.
Steve : Really? What about Fred and Sue? What ………………………………(they / do)?
Paul : …………………………………. (They / study) for an exam. They’re always in the

library at the moment.
Steve : How is your sister? Is she all right?
Paul : Yes, she’s fine, but she’s tired. ……………………………… (We / paint) the

living-room. It’s hard work.
Steve : Can I help you?
Paul : No, it’s OK. My father ……………………………. (help).
Steve : Well, I hope you find a good racquet.
C) This is Anna’s first letter in English to David. There are some mistakes. Rewrite wrong verb forms. Underline if the verb form is correct:

Dear David,

I live in a large flat in Rome. I’m having two sisters. They are called Rosa and Maria. We are getting up at seven o’clock every morning, and we have coffee and a small breakfast. I leave the flat at eight and walk to the university. I am finishing classes at five every day, and I arrive home at six. This month I work very hard for my exams.

At the moment, I eat breakfast in the kitchen of our flat, my mother drinks coffee, and my sisters are reading magazines.

On Saturday afternoons I am playing tennis with my friends, or I go to the cinema. Today, I’m going to see a new English film. Sometimes I am watching American films on TV, but I’m not understanding the words! Are you liking films?

Please write to me soon.

With best wishes,

Anna

D) Write sentences. Use the PRESENT SIMPLE or the PRESENT CONTINUOUS:

Example: (Usually she / work / at the office, but this week she / work / at home.)

Usually she works at the office, but this week she’s working at home.

1. (You / not / eat / very much at the moment. Are you ill?)

2. (She / know / three words in Italian!)

3. (I / take / the bus / to work this week, but usually I / walk)

4. (I / study / Japanese this year. It’s very difficult.)

5. (you / watch / the television at the moment?)

6. (I / not / remember / the name of the hotel.)

7. (She / speak / three languages.)

8. (The sun / shine / It’s a beautiful day!)

........................................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................................
WORKSHEET 7

SUBJECT: Simple Past Tense

A) Fill in the blanks with a verb from the box in the SIMPLE PAST:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>break</th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>sit</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>drink</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. She ..................... a cake an hour ago.
2. She ..................... a hat last week.
3. The boy ..................... a letter yesterday.
4. They ..................... in the sea for an hour.
5. They ..................... a lot of Coke last night.
6. She ..................... her arm last week.
7. He ..................... all his money last week.
8. She ..................... a bath two minutes ago.
9. He ..................... his wallet last night.
10. She ..................... on the old chair a minute ago.
11. She ..................... the clothes yesterday.

B) Fill in the blanks with the SIMPLE PAST of the verbs in brackets:

Last Saturday my father .... took.... (take) my friends and me to the circus. We ........(see) lots of things. My father ............... (buy) us some popcorn and orange juice. We ....................... (eat) the popcorn and ...................... (drink) the orange juice. We ...................... (laugh) at the funny clowns. There ............... (be) a lion-tamer. The lions ...................... (do) tricks; they ...................... (jump) through hoops. A girl ...................... (ride) an elephant around the ring. We all ...................... (have) a wonderful time.

C) Write what Jean DID or DIDN’T do yesterday:

go shopping (-) .......................... Jean didn’t go shopping yesterday.

- clean the house (+)
- feed the cat (+)
- telephone Mary (-)
- watch a film on TV (-)
- visit her grandparents (+)
- take them a cake (+)

D) Fill in the blanks with the PAST form of the verbs:

Benjamin Franklin ...... was born ...... (be born) in Boston in 1706. He ..................... (be) the fifteenth of the seventeen children of a poor candlemaker. He .....................(go ) to school only one year. He ..................... (begin) to work when he was twelve. At the age of fourteen he ..................... (decide) to be a writer. He .....................
(copy) the great stories of famous writers and later he ........................................ (become) the best known writer in his time.

When he .......................... (be) seventeen, he ......................... (leave) Boston and ......................... (arrive) in Philadelphia with only a few pennies in his pocket. He .......................... (get) a job as a publisher of a newspaper and ......................... (retire) from business as a very rich man at forty-two. Then he ......................... (spend) the next forty years for his government. He .......................... (play) an important role in the founding of the USA.

Franklin .................... (be) also an important scientist and inventor. He ....................... (draw) electricity from a cloud on a kite string. He ......................... (write) one of the first textbooks on electricity. He ......................... (invent) a simple lightning rod and many other practical tools. He ......................... (make) a study of water and ......................... (discover) many principles of hydrodynamics. He even ......................... (invent) bifocal glasses when he was seventy-eight and ......................... (need) them himself.

Franklin .................... (do) all these things and many more because he ......................... (believe) he ......................... (can).

E) Read the following story:

Bob is a young sailor. He lives in England, but he is often away with his ship.

One summer he comes back from a long voyage and finds new neighbors near his mother’s house. They have a pretty daughter, and Bob soon loves her and he wants to marry her when he comes back. Bob promises the girl to send a present from every port.

Bob’s first port is Capetown in Africa, and he sends the girl a parrot from there. The parrot speaks three languages. When Bob’s ship reaches Australia, a letter comes from the girl. The letter says, “Thank you for the parrot, Bob. It tasted much better than a chicken.”

a) Write the story again. Use THE SIMPLE PAST:

Bob was a young sailor. He lived in England, but he was often away with his ship.

b) Answer the questions about the story:

1. What was Bob?
   He was a young sailor.

2. What change did he find when he was back home?

3. How was their daughter?

4. How did Bob feel about the girl?

5. What did Bob tell the girl?

6. What did Bob send the girl from Capetown?

7. Where is Capetown?
8. How many languages did the parrot speak?
9. What did the girl do with the parrot?

G) Rewrite the sentences using the word and signs in parenthesis:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Sentence</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. We ate lunch at the cafeteria last night.</td>
<td>(-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. He didn’t eat lunch at the cafeteria last night.</td>
<td>(+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(he)</td>
<td>(-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(yesterday)</td>
<td>(?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(study in the library)</td>
<td>(-?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(we)</td>
<td>(-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(play tennis)</td>
<td>(+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I)</td>
<td>(-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(get a present)</td>
<td>(+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you)</td>
<td>(-?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(go shopping)</td>
<td>(?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(last week)</td>
<td>(-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(she)</td>
<td>(+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(stay home)</td>
<td>(?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(last night)</td>
<td>(-?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(they)</td>
<td>(-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(get into trouble)</td>
<td>(+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(you)</td>
<td>(?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(see him)</td>
<td>(-?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(yesterday afternoon)</td>
<td>(?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I)</td>
<td>(+)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A) Fill in the blanks with a correct form of PAST CONTINUOUS:

1. Alice hurt herself while she …………………………………… (skate).
2. I met my neighbor while I …………………………………… (walk) home from work.
3. Sally saw a friend while she ………………………………… (ride) her bicycle along Park St.
4. Peter fell asleep while he ……………………………………. (study).
5. Bob stepped on Jane’s feet while they ………………………… (dance) together.
6. I cut myself while I …………………………………… (shave).
7. Mr. and Mrs. Brown burned themselves while they …………………………... (bake) cookies.
8. Tommy had a nightmare while he ……………………………… (sleep) at a friend’s house.

B) How did it happen?

1. How did Alice hurt herself? (play soccer)
   ……………… She hurt herself while she was playing soccer.

2. How did Martin burn himself? (iron his clothes)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………

3. How did Helen cut herself? (slice onions)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………

4. How did Jennifer meet her husband? (fix a flat tire)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………

5. How did Marvin break his arm? (skate)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………

6. How did you lose your wallet? (ride my bicycle)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………

7. How did Jeff meet his wife? (swim at the beach)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………

8. How did Bob get a black eye? (fight with his brother)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………

9. How did your children burn themselves? (make breakfast)
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………

10. How did Martha fall? (dance)
    …………………………………………………………………………………………………
C) What’s the matter?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>What was he / she doing?</th>
<th>What happened?</th>
<th>What’s the result?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tina</td>
<td>ice-skate</td>
<td>fall on the ice</td>
<td>break foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jack</td>
<td>play football</td>
<td>kick the goalpost</td>
<td>break leg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bob</td>
<td>cycle</td>
<td>fall off the bike</td>
<td>injure hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>skate</td>
<td>fall over</td>
<td>break arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alice</td>
<td>dance</td>
<td>trip over the carpet</td>
<td>sprain ankle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Make dialogues as in the example:

Example: You : Hi, Tina! What’s the matter with your foot? 
           Tina : I broke it. 
           You : How did it happen? 
           Tina : I fell on the ice while I was ice-skating.

1. You : ………………………………………………………………………………?
   Jack : ……………………………………………………………………………….
   You : ………………………………………………………………………………?
   Jack : ………………………………………………………………………………

2. You : ………………………………………………………………………………?
   Bob : ………………………………………………………………………………
   You : ………………………………………………………………………………?
   Bob : ………………………………………………………………………………

3. You : ………………………………………………………………………………?
   Ann : ………………………………………………………………………………
   You : ………………………………………………………………………………?
   Ann : ………………………………………………………………………………

4. You : ………………………………………………………………………………?
   Alice : ………………………………………………………………………………
   You : ………………………………………………………………………………?
   Alice : ………………………………………………………………………………

D) Fill in the blanks with a correct form, the PAST SIMPLE or the PAST CONTINUOUS:

1. He ………………………………….. (talk) with Mary, when Mrs. Smith came in.
2. They ………………………………… (study) two hours last night.
3. Jane ………………………………… (sleep) when the telephone rang.
4. As I ………………………………… (walk) to the lab, I met my friend.
5. We ………………………………… (watch) TV last night.
6. The customer ………………………………… (pay) his cheque when he dropped his credit card.
7. The barber ………………………………… (cut) my hair yesterday.
8. She ………………………………… (dance) when she hurt her ankle.
9. It ………………………………… (rain) hard when I got up.
10. It ………………………………… (rain) hard last night.

E) Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses using the SIMPLE PAST or the PAST PROGRESSIVE:

1. Sally ………………………………… (eat) dinner last night when someone ………………… (knock) on the door.
2. I began to study at seven last night. Fred .................................. (come) at seven-thirty. I .................................. (study) when Fred .................................. (come).
3. While I .................................. (study) last night, Fred .................................. (drop by) to visit me.
4. My roommate’s parents .................................. (call) him last night while we .................................. (watch) TV.
5. My mother called me around five. My husband came home a little after five. When he .................................. (come) home, I .................................. (talk) to my mother on the phone.
6. Yesterday Tom and Janice .................................. (go) to the zoo around one. They .................................. (see) many kinds of animals. They stayed at the zoo for two hours. While they .................................. (walk) home, it .................................. (begin) to rain, so they .................................. (stop) at a small café and .................................. (have) a cup of coffee.
7. Yesterday afternoon I .................................. (go) to visit the Parker family. When I .................................. (get) there around two o’clock, Mrs. Parker .................................. (be) in the yard. She .................................. (plant) flowers in her garden. Mr. Parker .................................. (be) in the garage. He .................................. (work) on their car. He .................................. (change) the oil.

E) What’s the question?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>how</th>
<th>what</th>
<th>where</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>how long</td>
<td>what kind of</td>
<td>who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how many</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>why</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ..................Who did you visit ..................? I visited my cousin.
2. ..................? We talked about my job.
3. ..................? She went to the beach.
4. ..................? She met her friend.
5. ..................? They spoke Russian.
6. ..................? They swam in the ocean.
7. ..................? He had dinner at 8:00.
8. ..................? I baked an apple pie.
9. ..................? She cried because her dog ran away.
10. ..................? I stayed for a week.
11. ..................? I came home by train.
12. ..................? He ate three hamburgers.
13. ..................? He left the restaurant at 9:00.
14. ..................? She wrote a letter to her mother.
15. ..................? They studied all morning.
16. ..................? We took a lot of photographs.
17. ..................? We sent a postcard to our teacher.
18. ..................? He fell asleep during the lecture.
19. ..................? I lost my wallet while I was skating.
20. ..................? They covered their eyes because they were scared.
WORKSHEET 9

SUBJECT : Simple Past and Past Continuous

A) Fill in the blanks with a correct form of PAST CONTINUOUS:

1. It was very cold. The sun ………. was not shining. ………………. (not / shine)
2. It wasn’t a stormy night. The wind …………………………………… (not / blow)
3. He wasn’t sleeping. He …………………………………….. (look) at the ceiling.
4. They were having a rest. They …………………………………… (not / work).
5. They were very happy. They ………………………………….. (enjoy) the party.
6. He was at home. He ………………………………………… (watch) a movie on TV.
7. He was getting worse. He …………………………………….. (not / recover).
8. We ……………………………….. (travel) in the north of Turkey when we were on holiday.
9. She …………………………………. (drive) so fast when the accident happened.
10. I …………………………………. (not / sleep) when you came in.

B) Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses using the SIMPLE PAST or the PAST PROGRESSIVE:

1. While they ………………………….. (travel) to China, Marco …………………….. (keep) a diary.
2. Mrs. White …………………………………. (drive) past a house in Main Street when she ……………….. (see) the ground floor on fire.
3. While he ………………………………. (fly) off the Miami Coast, the pilot …………….. (see) sharks approaching the swimmers.
4. The fireman ……………………………… (fight) the fire on a balcony below when he ………………………….. (hear) someone’s shouts.
5. She ……………………………….. (die) while she ………………………….. (run) after a bus.
6. We ……………………………………. (have) dinner when the electricity ……………………. (go) off.
7. She …………………………………… (think) of something else while you ……………… (talk) to her.
8. I ………………………….. (see) her while I ………………………………. (look) out of the window.
9. While the teacher …………………………………. (talk), the students ……………………… (look) at an insect on the ceiling.
WORKSHEET 10

SUBJECT: Present Perfect Tense

A) Write a suitable sentence using the PRESENT PERFECT TENSE:

1. Ann’s hair was dirty. Now it’s clean. (wash) ........ **Ann has washed her hair** ........
2. Tom was 80 kg. Now he’s 70. (lose weight) ........................................................
3. Bill played football yesterday. Now he can’t walk; his leg is in plaster. (break)
   ....................................................................................................................
4. My sister is looking for her pen. (lose) ..............................................................
5. Mary is on holiday in France. (go) .................................................................
6. Mr. Hill was in Canada last week. He’s back in London now. (be)
   ....................................................................................................................
7. Look! Mrs. Smith has got a lot of packages. (buy) ............................................
8. I can’t eat anything now. (eat too much) ......................................................
9. Mrs. Jenkins is very tired. (clean / house) ....................................................
10. Tony needs a holiday. (work / hard / this year) .............................................

B) Use PRESENT PERFECT TENSE after BECAUSE:

Example: She can’t go to the party. (catch a cold)
She can’t go to the party **because she has caught a cold**.

1. He can’t walk very fast. (hurt / leg)
   ....................................................................................................................
2. I can’t get in. (lose / key)
   ....................................................................................................................
3. I know this story very well. (see the film)
   ....................................................................................................................
4. I can’t post the letter. (not put / stamp / on it)
   ....................................................................................................................
5. He can’t stand up. (eat too much)
   ....................................................................................................................
6. They can’t go on holiday. (not save / money)
   ....................................................................................................................
7. I know him. (meet him before)
   ....................................................................................................................
8. We don’t know how he is. (not hear from him)
   ....................................................................................................................
9. He won’t take a cigarette. (give up smoking)
   ....................................................................................................................
10. She can’t get in. (he / lock the door)
    ....................................................................................................................

C) Follow the example and do the same using ALREADY:

Example: Bring the milk in, please.
- **I have ALREADY brought it in**.

1. You must find the tickets soon. .................................................................
2. Turn the radio down, please. .................................................................
3. Tidy your room.

4. Could you post the letters, please?

5. Why don’t you see a doctor?

6. You have a bad cough. I think you should stop smoking.

7. Why don’t you clean your shoes?

8. Brush your teeth, will you?

9. We have guests today. Shall we make a cake?

10. We should invite Mary to the party.

D) Follow the example and do the same using YET:

Example: She has been in the shop. (buy anything)
- She has been in the shop but she hasn’t bought anything YET.

1. I’ve written to them three times. (not reply)

2. I’ve asked you again and again. (not do it)

3. I lent him $10 last month. (not give it back)

4. He lost his pen a week ago. (not find it)

5. He borrowed my book last year. (not give it back)

6. She went to New York six months ago. (not return it)

7. She gave me $2 a week ago. (not return it)

8. I finished reading my library books a long time ago. (not change them)

9. She went to the bus-stop half an hour ago. (the bus / not come)

10. He’s still studying that lesson. (not learn it)

D) Fill in the blanks with ALREADY or YET:

1. He hasn’t called us .

2. They have . sent the letter.

3. John has . bought the tickets for the football match.

4. We have . been to Mexico three times.

5. You haven’t visited Tokyo .

6. Has John bought a new car ?

7. The plane has . left.

8. Has she done it ? No, not .

9. A: Haven’t they arrived ?
   B: Oh, yes. They have . arrived.

10. Hurry up! The class has . started.

11. Be careful! They have . painted the door.

12. Haven’t you read the book ?
E) Follow the example and do the same using JUST:

Example: he / go out
- What has he JUST done?
- He has JUST gone out.

1. She / leave the room
2. they / watch the news
3. I / finish homework
4. he / put on the jacket
5. she / catch a fish
6. he / call a taxi
7. you / write a letter
8. the girl / burn the cake
9. the teacher / walk out
10. the dog / see the cat
11. Jane / turn the TV off
12. the boys / eat dinner

F) Put the verbs in the correct tense. Use the SIMPLE PAST or the PRESENT PERFECT:

1. Tim …………………….. (finish) his work yet?
2. he …………………………… (finish) it yesterday?
3. They …………………….. (just / go) out.
4. They ………………………………………….. (go) out a minute ago.
5. Ann ……………………………………….. (study) yesterday afternoon?
6. you ……………………………………….. (send) the letters yet?
7. she ……………………………………….. (call) him a week ago?
8. They ………………………………………….. (not / see) the film yet.
9. The train ………………………………………………… (just / arrive).
10. you ………………………………………….. (ever / be) in a TV studio?
11. you and Tom ………………………………………….. (enjoy) the party last night?
12. you ………………………………………….. (not / finish) school last year?
13. I ………………………………………….. (lose) my dictionary. I can’t find it anywhere.
14. He ………………………………………………… (have) a haircut.
15. (he / give up) smoking?
16. Jane ……………………………………….. (buy) her car two weeks ago.
17. Somebody ………………………………………….. (take) it.
18. Why ………………………………………………… (Jim / not want) to play tennis last Friday?
19. The car looks clean. ………………………………………….. (wash) it?
20. When we were on holiday, the weather ……………………………….. (be) terrible.
G) Ask questions with HOW LONG:

Example: I am married.

-HOW LONG have you been married?

1. I know Bob. .................................................................
2. Sue and Alan are married. ..............................................
3. George is unemployed. ...................................................
4. Those books are here. ....................................................
5. Mary is at the airport. ....................................................
6. My sister is ill. ..............................................................
7. She has got a bad cold. ...................................................
8. Jan has long hair. ..........................................................
9. I have a yacht. ..............................................................
10. They are in the restaurant. ..............................................
11. My parents are in London. .............................................
12. The cat is under the table. .............................................

H) Rewrite the following sentences twice, using SINCE and FOR:

Example: I haven’t seen you. (Christmas / 3 days)
a) I haven’t seen you SINCE Christmas.
b) I haven’t seen you FOR 3 days.

1. We’ve been here. (an hour / 4 o’clock)
a) ....................................................................................
b) ....................................................................................
2. She hasn’t spoken to me. (2 weeks / last week)
a) ....................................................................................
b) ....................................................................................
3. They’ve lived in this street. (1970 / a long time)
a) ....................................................................................
b) ....................................................................................
4. I haven’t had time to do it. (last Monday / a few days)
a) ....................................................................................
b) ....................................................................................
5. We haven’t bought a new one. (ages / many years)
a) ....................................................................................
b) ....................................................................................
SUBJECT: Present Perfect vs Present Perfect Continuous

A) Use PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE to fill in the blanks:

1. I'm tired, because I …… have been working ……… (work) very hard.
2. He …………………………………………….. (write) letters all morning.
3. Catherina is getting fatter because she …………………………………… (eat) too much.
4. My mother ……………………………………….. (peel) the potatoes all afternoon.
5. Cathy ………………………………………….. (attend) a cookery course since March.
6. How long …………… you …………………………………………. (learn) English?
7. Where are my eye-glasses? I …………………………………………….. (look) for them for an hour.
8. Charles …………………………………………. (escape) from the police for years.
9. How long …………….. (use) a computer?
10. Elizabeth ………………………………………….. (live) with Mike for three years.
11. She …………………………………………. (earn) quite a lot of money for the last two years.
12. It …………………………………………………. (rain) fro six hours.

B) Use PRESENT PERFECT TENSE or PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS to fill in the blanks:

1. I’ve bought / have been buying a new pair of shoes.
2. Have you finished / Have you been finishing reading that book yet?
3. They’ve eaten / have been eating fruit all afternoon, ever since they came from school.
4. I’ve been reading / have read this book now, so you can have it back.
5. I’ve been writing / have written eight pages already.
6. Your exam paper is completely blank! What have you been doing / have you done?
7. Oh, no! There’s nothing to eat. My sister has been eating / has eaten everything I left in the kitchen.
8. Oh, no! There’s no wine to drink. They have drunk / have been drinking all the wine.
9. No wonder your eyes hurt. You’ve been playing / have played computer games ever since you had your breakfast.
10. I haven’t seen / haven’t been seeing you for ages.
11. God! Hakan has scored / has been scoring.
12. They have danced / have been dancing for an hour.
13. I have been waiting / have waited for you for ages.
14. I’ve finished / ‘ve been finishing my work.
15. I’ve been writing / have written this letter for an hour.
16. He has visited / has been visiting ten museums this week.
17. I’m very tired. Because I have travelled / have been travelling around Istanbul all day.
18. She has found / has been finding a good job.
19. I’m hot because I have been running / have run.
20. I have written / have been writing letters for weeks.
A) Use THE SIMPLE PAST or THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE to fill in the blanks:

1. What ........................................ (you / learn) since you ......................... (come) here? How many friends ........................................ (you / make)? I hope you ........................................ (already / meet) a lot of interesting people.
2. Last night my roommate and I ....................... (have) some free time, so we ....................... (go) to a show.
3. I ......................................... (just / have) lunch, but I ....................................... (not / have) lunch yesterday.
4. Who ........................................ (write) the play “Hamlet”? 
5. How many games ....................................... (the team / win) so far this season?
6. I don’t know Carol’s husband. I ........................................ (never / meet) him.
7. It ........................................ (rain) a lot last week, but it ....................................... (not / rain) much so far this week.
8. How many letters ........................................ (you / write) since the beginning of the month?
9. When we were on vacation, the weather ....................................... (be) terrible.
10. In her whole lifetime, Mary ........................................ (never / see) snow.
11. I don’t know where Ammy is. ....................................... (you / see) her?
12. When I ....................... (get) home last night, I ....................... (be) very tired and I ....................... (go) straight to bed.
13. Your car looks very clean. ....................................... (you / wash) it?
14. George ....................................... (not / be) very well last week.
15. Mr. Clark ....................................... (work) in a bank for 15 years. Then he gave it up.

B) Use PRESENT PERFECT TENSE or PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS to fill in the blanks:

1. I’m trying to study. I ........................................ (try) to study for the last hour, but something always seems to interrupt me. I think I’d better go to the library.
2. The children are playing basketball right now. They ........................................ (play) for almost two hours. They must be getting tired.
3. The telephone ........................................ (ring) four times in the last hour, and each time it has been for my roommate.
4. The telephone ........................................ (ring) for almost a minute. Why doesn’t someone answer it?
5. It ........................................ (rain) all day. I wonder when it will stop.
6. We ........................................ (have) three accidents so far this week. I wonder how many more we will have if you keep using the tools carelessly.
7. We ........................................ (live) here since last June.
8. My little son is dirty from head to foot because he ........................................ (play) in the mud.
9. What’s the matter? Your eyes are red and puffy. I hope you ........................................ (not / cry). Oh, now I understand. You ........................................ (peel) some onions.
10. Hello, Rob. I’m happy to see you again. I ………………………………………………… (not / see) you for weeks. What ………………………… you ………………………… (do) lately?
11. I ………………………………………………… (not / be) able to reach my boss on the phone yet. I ………………………………………………… (try) for the last twenty minutes, but the line ……………………………………… busy.
12. We ………………………………………………… (have) three major snowstorms so far this winter. I wonder how many more we will have.
13. I …………………………………………………. (write) them three times, but I still haven’t received a reply.
14. A: Dr. Harrison is a good teacher. How long ………………. he ……………………. (be) at the university?
   B: He ………………………………………………… (teach) here for almost 25 years.
15. A: What are you going to order for dinner?
   B: Well, I ………………………………………………… (have / have) pizza. So I think, I’ll order that.
16. My uncle …………………………………………………. (paint) the outside of his house for three weeks and he’s still not finished.
17. The Smiths are presently in Tunisia. They …………………………………………. (travel) throughout North Africa since the middle of May. They’ll return home in another month.

C) Use THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE or THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS to fill in the blanks:

1. I’m tired. We ……………………………………………….. (walk) for over an hour. Let’s stop and rest for a while.
2. The zoo isn’t far from here. I ………………………………………………… (walk) there many times.
3. I …………………………………………………………………. (write) my friends at least a dozen letters since I left home and come home.
4. Sally is writing a letter to her boyfriend. She ………………………………………………… (write) it since she got home from class. It’s going to be a long letter.
5. The telephone ……………………………………………………… (ring) four times in the last hour, and each time it has been for my roommate.
6. The telephone ……………………………………………………… (ring) for almost a minute. Why doesn’t someone answer it?
7. She is 80 and she ……………………………………………. (never / read) a book in her life.
8. The secretary is very tired. She …………………………………………………………. (type) all morning.
9. Tom is reading a book. He started two hours ago and he is on page 53. He ………………………………………………. (read) for two hours.
10. Hello! I …………………………………………………. (clean) the windows. So far I ………………………………………………… (clean) five of them and there are two more to do.
12. A: Is your father at home?
   B: No, I’m afraid he ………………………………………………. (go) out.
   A: When exactly ………………………………………………. (he / go) out?
   B: About ten minutes ago.
D) Use THE SIMPLE PAST or THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE to fill in the blanks:

1. The young man ................................ (never / be) to Paris, but he .................... (read) a book about this city last year.
2. .................................. you ...................... (decide) where to go yet?
3. A: Have some tea, please.
   B: No, thank you. I .................................. (just / have) two cups of tea.
4. Susan ................................ (do) her homework before 10 o’clock but Jane ...................... ................................ (not /write) a word until now.
5. Her mother ..................................... (buy) her a pair of new shoes yesterday.
6. The Prime Minister ..................................... (leave) for the USA an hour ago.
7. A: .................................. the plane ...................... (land)
   B: Yes, it ...................... ...................... (land) ten minutes ago.
8. It .................................. (not / rain) for a long time.
9. .................................. you ...................... (see) my dog? It ...................... ...................... (run away) this morning.
10. We ...................... ...................... (meet) at a party a long time ago, but I ...................... (not / see) her since then.
11. I ................................ (see) an interesting book in a bookshop yesterday, but I ...................... (not / have) it.
12. My friend .................................. (fall) from the bicycle because he ...................... (not / ride) one for ages.
13. His father .................................. (die) in 1970, but he ...................... (never / visit) his father’s grave since that time.
14. They ...................... ...................... (go) to America years ago, but none of them ...................... (come) back since then.
15. A: ...................... you ...................... (speak) to an Englishman?
   B: Yes, I ...................... (have) a short conversation with one last night.
16. A: ...................... you ever ...................... (be) to Tatilya?
   B: Yes, I ...................... (go) there two years ago.
17. A: ...................... you ...................... (see) Jane recently?
   B: No, I ...................... ...................... (see) her for a long time.

E) Rewrite the sentences using SIMPLE PAST or PRESENT PERFECT TENSE:

1. I haven’t seen her for a long time.
   It’s ages since I saw her .............................................
2. I last met George two weeks ago.
   I haven’t ..........................................................
3. They have been here for three months.
   They arrived ..........................................................
4. We started living in Istanbul 12 years ago.
   We have ..........................................................
5. I last saw my girlfriend five days ago.
   I haven’t ..........................................................
6. Is this the first time you have tasted a kivi?
   ...................... (not) you ...................... one before?
7. I last smoked a cigarette ten years ago.
   I haven’t ..........................................................
8. I last drank wine two weeks ago.
   It’s two weeks ........................................................ wine.
9. I have lived in Istanbul since January.
   I ...................... ........................................................ (come)
10. They moved to Ankara two years ago.
   They ................................................................. two years.
11. She hasn’t been to Rome before.
   This is the first time ...........................................
SUBJECT: Past Perfect Tense

A) Supply a suitable SIMPLE PAST or PAST PERFECT TENSE:

1. I ……………………… (worry) a lot about her before I ……………………… (hear) that she was safe.
2. I didn’t like the flat. It ……………………… (be) much smaller than I ………………… (think) at first.
3. He told us he ……………………… (shoot) a big tiger.
4. They ……………………… (drink) tea after they ………………………………. (finish) dinner.
5. She …………………. just ……………….. (fold) the pink apron and placed it in a table drawer when the door …………………………… (open) and Joe …………………. (enter).
6. The police wanted to know why he …………………………….. (bring) a gun to school.
7. After he ……………………… (work) at the hospital for two years he ………………… (decide) to give up the job.
8. When I ……………………… (arrive) at the party John ……………. already ………… (go) home.
9. We ……………………… (wait) until the match ……………………………. (finish).
10. They …………………………… (leave) the room before the meeting ………………… (finish).
11. I …………………………… (buy) a new camera before I …………………. (go) to London.
12. I ……………….. just ………………… (turn off) the lights when the telephone ………… (ring).

B) Supply a suitable SIMPLE PAST or PAST PERFECT TENSE:

1. …………… he …………….. (know) her for a long time before they ………………… (get) married?
2. He …………………………… (drive) down the hotel where they ………………… (spend) their honeymoon years ago.
3. When we ……………………… (get) to the station the train …………………………… (already / leave).
4. He …………………………… (sit) at a table by the window where he ………………… (have) a meal with Jane.
5. Why ……………. he ……………… (not / ask) her to wait and think again before she …………………. (leave) Paris.
6. He was wondering why he …………………………….. (let) her leave so easily.
7. He knew he …………………………….. (earn) that money with a great difficulty.
8. After they …………………………… (go), he …………………….. (sit) down and ………………………… (light) a cigarette.
9. He …………………………… (have to) go to work by bus because his car ………………… (break) down.
10. He …………………………… (angry) before he ……………………. (hear) my offer.
A) Supply a suitable SIMPLE PAST or PAST PERFECT TENSE:

1. They ................................ (go) home after they ................................ (finish) their work.
2. She .................................. (just / go) out when I called her.
3. My brother .......................... (eat) all the pie before we got back.
4. He wondered why I .......................... (not / visit) him before.
5. She said that she .......................... (already / see) the Pyramids.
6. The fire .................................. (spread) to the next building before the firemen .................................. (arrive).
7. They drank small cups of coffee, after they .................................. (finish) dinner.
8. He told me he .......................... (catch) a young lion.
9. His mother .......................... (worry) a lot about him before she .................................. (hear) that he was safe.
10. He .................................. (already / learn) English before he .......................... (leave) for England, but before he arrived in England, he .................................. (forget) some.
11. Mary .................................. (go) swimming after she .......................... (come) home. After she .................................. (swim), she .................................. (call) her friend Judy.
12. I .................................. (go) to the theatre with my friends yesterday. I .................................. (not / go) to the theatre for a year. We .................................. (have) a very good time.
13. After they .......................... (finish) their breakfast, they .................................. (leave) for school.
14. Linda .......................... (play) tennis after she .......................... (do) her homework.
15. My father .......................... (water) the flowers after he .......................... (clean) the car. After he .......................... (water) the flowers, he .................................. (have) dinner.

B) Combine the following sentences by using AFTER / BEFORE:

1. My mother took her umbrella. She went out.
   ........................................................................................................
2. Frank called me. I went to school.
   ........................................................................................................
3. I washed the dishes. I watched TV.
   ........................................................................................................
4. She washed her hands. She had lunch.
   ........................................................................................................
5. The boys bought a ball. They played football.
   ........................................................................................................
   ........................................................................................................
7. He put sugar in his tea. He drank it.
   ........................................................................................................
8. I got up. I had breakfast.

9. The children ran away. They broke the window.

10. I fastened my seat belt. The plane took off.

C) Complete the following sentences:

1. After I had watched that horror film, I ............................................................

2. She finished her homework after .................................................................

3. When I came home, my sister ......................... already ..................................

4. Before he went out, .......................................................... ................................

5. They had telephoned me before .................................................................

D) Read the passage and answer the questions:

I had an amusing experience last year. After I had left a small village in the south of France, I drove on to the next town. On the way a young man waved to me. I stopped and he asked me for a lift. After he had got into the car, I said good morning to him in French and he replied in the same language. Except a few words, I do not know any French at all. Neither of us spoke during the journey. I had nearly reached the town, when the young man suddenly said, very slowly, “Do you speak English?”

As I soon learned, he was English himself!

1. When did the writer drive on to the next town?

2. When did he say good morning to the man in French?

3. When did the young man say, “Do you speak English?”

E) Fill in the following sentences by using PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE:

1. We .................................................... (play) football for half an hour when it started to rain.

2. I .................................................... (study) English for a short time when the electricity went off.

3. She ................................................ (do) her homework before you came in.

4. His knees and hands were very dirty. He .................................................... (crawl) in the garden.

5. I .................................................... (drive) the car for five years when I sold it.

6. We were very tired. We .................................................... (travel) for about sixteen hours.

7. They were out of breath. They .................................................... (run) for a long time.

8. He .................................................... (live) in London for ten years when he had an accident.

9. He was tired because he .................................................... (write) letters all morning.

10. He .................................................... (repair) the radio for an hour when you arrived.
F) Fill in the following sentences by using PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE:

1. I was tired because I ................................................ (type) for a long time.
2. Her boss was very angry with her because she ........................................ (come) to work very late.
3. I didn’t know about the earthquake because I ........................................... (not / watch) television.
4. She was too fat because she ............................................................... (not / keep) her
   doctor’s advice.
5. I took my car to the garage because the brakes ........................................ (not / work).
6. She had to go to the dentist because she .................................................. (not / clean)
   her teeth.
7. He got bad marks because he ............................................................... (not / study) hard.
8. She wasn’t at home. She ................................................................. (go) out with her
   boyfriend.
9. I thought I ............................................................... (behave) like an idiot.
10. He .............................................................. (study) English) very hard for the last
    few days.
SUBJECT: Going to

A) Complete each sentence. Use GOING TO and the verb in brackets:

1. …………….. Are you going to buy …………………… (you / buy) a new bike?
2. Tom …………………………………………………………… (not / be) a doctor.
3. I …………………………………………………………. (buy) some new shoes.
4. ………………………………………………………… (Helen / catch) the train?
5. Who ……………………………………………………. (carry) the shopping for me?
6. Jim and Dinah …………………………………………… (not / get) married.
7. Sam …………………………………………………………… (take) a holiday.
8. What time …………………………………………………………… (you / phone) me?
9. Where …………………………………………………………… (we / eat) tonight?
10. I …………………………………………………………… (not / give) a birthday present!

B) Rewrite each sentence or question with GOING TO:

1. Joe plans to buy a new computer next year.
   … Joe is going to buy a new computer next year.
2. We don’t plan to play tennis this weekend.
3. Does Nick plan to join the sports club?
4. What are your plans for next summer?
5. Look! That tree is about to fall over!
6. Do you plan to work hard this year?
7. I don’t intend to get a new car.
8. The forecast for tomorrow is rain.
9. Do Mike and Pat plan to make sandwiches for the party?
10. I think it’s about to snow.

C) What are you going to do next summer? Write sentences:

….. Next summer I’m going to have a great holiday. I’m going to …………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………
D) Rob Brown and Molly Gould are opera singers. A reporter has interviewed them about their summer plans. Look at the table and, in pairs, ask and answer questions using prompts, as in the example.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Rob Brown</th>
<th>Molly Gould</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. give / concerts</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. go / to India</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. appear / in a TV show</td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. go on / holiday in August</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. take part / in charity events</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. sing / at the Queen’s party</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. make / a record</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. sing / in a rock opera</td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: 1. Student 1: *Is Rob going to give any concerts in the summer?*
   Student 2: *Yes, he is. Is Molly going to give any concerts in the summer?*
   Student 1: *Yes, she is.*

2. .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................

3. .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................

4. .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................

5. .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................

6. .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................

7. .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................

8. .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
   .............................................................
E) Use the words / phrases from the list to complete the sentences, as in the example:

- sell her car
- be late for school
- make a cake
- fix
- lose weight

1. Jane’s putting an ad in the newspaper.
   She is going to sell her car. .................................................................

2. The washing machine isn’t working.
   My father ………………………………………………………………………

3. I bought some flour and some eggs.
   I …………………………………………………………………………………

4. Robert is on a diet.
   He ………………………………………………………………………………

5. Peter is still in bed.
   He ………………………………………………………………………………

F) Jonathan is not satisfied with his life as it is. He has already decided to change a number of things. Look at the prompts and say what he intends to do, as in the example:

1. move to the city center
   He is going to move to the city center ..............................................

2. sell his car
   …………………………………………………………………………………..

3. buy a bigger house
   …………………………………………………………………………………..

4. marry Susan
   …………………………………………………………………………………..

5. apply for a job with a law firm
   …………………………………………………………………………………..

G) Write questions and answers as in the example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>teacher</th>
<th>doctor</th>
<th>singer</th>
<th>football player</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fred</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rod &amp; Ben</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joan</td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Fred / singer? ……… Is Fred going to be a singer? …………………………….
    ……… No, he isn’t. He isn’t going to be a singer. ……………………………..
    ……… He is going to be a doctor. ……………………………………………....

2. Rod and Ben / teachers? ……………………………………………………………..
    ………………………………………………………………………………………

3. Joan / doctor? ………………………………………………………………………..
    ………………………………………………………………………………………


4. Ted / singer? ……………………………………………………………………………………………
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………

5. You / teacher? ………………………………………………………………………………………
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………

H) Make sentences, as in the example:

* miss the train  * make some tea  * change it  * crash
* shout at us  * take some photos  * play in the snow  * make a cake
* fall off  * sell his house

1. She can’t stop the car!
   She is going to crash ………………………………………………………………………

2. They are late.
   They ……………………………………………………………………………………………

3. The headmaster looks angry!
   He ……………………………………………………………………………………………

4. Jim has got his camera.
   He ……………………………………………………………………………………………

5. Mick’s putting up a “For Sale” sign.
   He ……………………………………………………………………………………………

6. The car has got a flat tyre.
   He ……………………………………………………………………………………………

7. Mum’s looking at a recipe.
   She ……………………………………………………………………………………………

8. Look! The ladder is broken.
   Oh no, he ………………………………………………………………………………………

9. They’re putting their hats and gloves on.
   They ……………………………………………………………………………………………

10. Kevin’s putting the kettle on.
    He ……………………………………………………………………………………………
A) Make sentences with WILL BE –ING:

1. I’m going to watch television from 9 until 10 o’clock this evening.
   So at 9.30 I ………………………………………………………………………
2. Tomorrow afternoon I’m going to play tennis from 3 o’clock until 4.30.
   So at 4 o’clock tomorrow I ……………………………………………………
3. Jim is going to study from 7 o’clock until 10 o’clock this evening.
   So at 8.30 this evening he ……………………………………………………
4. We are going to clean the flat tomorrow. It will take from 9 until 11 o’clock.
   So at 10 o’clock tomorrow morning …………………………………………………
5. Tom is a football fan and there is a football match on television this evening. The match begins at 7.30 and ends at 9.15.
   So at 8.30 this evening ……………………………………………………
6. Don’t phone me between 7 and 8. ……………………………………………… (we / finish) dinner then.
7. A: Can we meet tomorrow afternoon?
   B: Not in the afternoon. …………………………………………………… (I / work).
8. Do you think ……………………………………………………………………… (you / still / do) the same job in ten years’ time?
9. If you need to contact me, ………………………………………………….. (I / stay) at the Hilton Hotel until Friday.
10. A: ………………………………………………………………………………… (you / see) Laura tomorrow?
    B: Yes, probably. Why?
    A: I borrowed this book from her. Can you give it back to her?

B) Ask questions with WILL YOU BE –ING?

1. You want to borrow your friend’s bicycle this evening.
   (you / use / your bicycle this evening?) ……………………………………………………
2. You want your friend to give Tom a message this afternoon.
   (you / see / Tom this afternoon?) ……………………………………………………
3. You want to use your friend’s typewriter tomorrow evening.
   (you / use / your typewriter tomorrow evening?) ……………………………………………………
4. Your friend is going shopping. You want him/her to buy some stamps for you at the post office.
   (you / pass / the post office when you’re in town?) ……………………………………………………

C) A gang of criminals have a plan to steal millions of pounds from a London bank and leave the country. They’re talking about what they will be doing a week from now, after the robbery.

1. We / live / in luxury ……… We’ll be living in luxury ……………
2. We / relax / at our villa …………………………………………………
3. I / sit / by the pool …………………………………………………
4. The sun / shine .................................................................
5. We / enjoy / ourselves ......................................................
6. The police / look for us ......................................................
7. But / we / laugh / at them .....................................................

D) Make sentences with WILL BE –ING:

1. I’m playing tennis now. (this afternoon)
   .......................... **I’ll be playing tennis this afternoon.** ........................................
2. He is sleeping now. (at eleven o’clock)
   ...................................................................................................................
3. We’re working very hard. (at this time next month)
   ...................................................................................................................
4. They are traveling. (all night)
   ...................................................................................................................
5. She’s doing the washing up. (in an hour’s time)
   ...................................................................................................................
6. He’s still mending his car. (at dinner time)
   ...................................................................................................................
7. I am driving a BMW. (in two years’ time)
   ...................................................................................................................
8. I’m studying English. (from 8 to 10)
   ...................................................................................................................
9. I’m having an interview now. (at 2 o’clock this afternoon)
   ...................................................................................................................
10. We’re listening to pop music. (at this time tomorrow)
    ...................................................................................................................
SUBJECT: *Future Perfect / Future Perfect Continuous*

A) What will life be like in the year 2100? Complete the sentences using WILL HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE form:

Example: By 2100, the world’s population…. *will have increased* …… (increase) to around 30,000 million.

1. Life ………………………………….. (become) more automated by then.
2. Computers ……………………………………… (take over) many of the jobs that people do today.
3. The earth’s supplies of oil, coal and gas ……………………………………… (run out).
4. ……………………………………… (scientists / find) other sources of energy?
5. How ………………………………….. (change)?
6. ………………………………… (we / find) a way to feed all the people in the world?

B) Use WILL HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE form:

1. Tom and Ann are going to the cinema. The film begins at 7.30 and it is already 7.20. And it will take them 20 minutes to get there.
   When they get there, ………………………………………… (the film / already / start)
2. Jim always goes to bed at 11 o’clock. Tom is going to visit him at 11.30 this evening.
   When Tom arrives, …………………………………………………….. (Jim / go / to bed)
3. Tom is on holiday. He has very little money and he is spending too much too quickly.
   Before the end of his holiday, ……………………………….. (he / spend / all his money)
4. Chuck came to Britain from the US nearly three years ago. Next Monday it will be exactly three years since he arrived.
   Next Monday ………………………………………… (he / be / here / exactly three years)
5. Next year is Ted and Amy’s 25th wedding anniversary. They …………………………….. (be married) for 25 years.
6. Jane is from New Zealand. She is traveling around Europe at the moment. So far she has traveled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, ……………………………………….. (she / travel) more than 3,000 miles.

C) Use FUTURE PERFECT TENSE:

1. By next February I ……………………………………………… (write) my third book.
2. I hope you ………………………………….. (not / forget) my name by tomorrow.
3. By next week we ………………………………………. (redecorate) the house.
4. Next July she ………………………………………. (be) dead for ten years.
5. I hope I ………………………………………. (not / make) a lot of mistakes in this exam when I finish it.
6. By the end of this year I …………………………………… (drive) more than one hundred thousand kilometers with this car.
7. I hope it ………………………………………. (stop) raining before the match starts.
8. I ………………………………………. (have) an operation when you turn back.
9. By this time next week I ……………………………………… (marry).
10. If nothing is done one million species that are alive today ……………………………………… (become) extinct in twenty years.
11. The tropical rain forests .................................................. (disappear) in thirty years.

D) Fill in the blanks using FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE:

1. By the end of June I .................................................. (live) in this flat for thirteen years.
2. I ................................................................. (fly) to London for an hour at this time tomorrow.
3. At this time next week I .................................................. (work) for this company for 20 years.
4. When the bell rings I .................................................. (teach) for eight hours today.
5. I ................................................................. (wear) these glasses for five years next week.
6. I ................................................................. (drive) this car for six years tomorrow.
7. At this time tomorrow I ............................................... (take) a test for an hour.
8. At this time next year I ............................................... (have) a holiday in Antalya for a week.
9. At this time next year I .................................................. (live) in Istanbul for ten years.
10. By the time we get home they ....................................... (play) football for half an hour.
11. She ................................................................. (dance) for an hour at nine o’clock.
12. I ................................................................. (learn) English for ten years by the end of this year.
A) Join each idea in A with an idea from B. Make sentences using WAS / WERE GOING TO and the verbs in brackets.

```
A                                                                                  B
1.   I (take) a taxi home last night,                            a)  but it rained all afternoon, so we
2.   We (write) to them when we were                            b)  but my boss offered me more money, stayed at home.
on holiday,                                                          so I decided to stay.
3.   She (drive) to Scotland last weekend,                c)  but I didn’t have enough money, so I had to walk.
4.   We (play) tennis yesterday afternoon,               d)  but she had seen it before, so she went to bed early.
5.   She (watch) the film on TV last night,               e)  but her car broke down, so she went by train.
6.   I (change) my job last year. f)  but we changed our minds and phoned them instead.
```

1.   I was going to take a taxi home last night, but I didn’t have enough money, so I had to walk…

2.   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

3.   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

4.   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

5.   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

6.   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

B) Complete the sentences. Use WAS / WERE GOING TO and these verbs: drive / get / go pick / see:

1.   The train left just as Harold …………………………………………… on it.
2.   The shop closed as I ………………………………………………… in it.
3.   The phone stopped ringing just as I …………………………………………… it up.
4.   We went to the cinema, where we ……………………………………… a film about the Mafia, but it was so popular we couldn’t get in.
5.   Bob had trouble parking. A car took the last place in the car park just when he ……………………………………… into it.

C) Use WAS / WERE GOING TO:

1.   Did you travel by train?
   No, I was going to travel by train but I changed my mind…
2.   Did you buy that jacket you saw in the shop window?
   No, I ……………………………………………………………… but I changed my mind.
3.   Did Sue get married?
   No, she ……………………………………………………………… but she …
4.   Did Wayne and Sharon go to Greece for their holidays?
   No, …………………………………………………………………
5.   Did you play tennis yesterday?
   No, …………………………………………………………………
6.   Did you invite Ann to the party?
   No, …………………………………………………………………
SUBJECT : Future Forms

A) Fill in the blanks with the correct FUTURE forms:
(Will / Going to / Present Continuous / Simple Present)

1. A: What …………………… you …………………… (do) when you grow up?
   B: I ………………………………………… (be) an acrobat in a circus.

9. I haven’t seen him for a long time but I think I ……………………………………… (recognize) him.

3. A: I need some tokens to telephone my friend.
   B: I ……………………………………………… (give) you some.

4. I got the plane tickets. I ……………………………………… (fly) on Sunday.

5. A: Have you got any plans for the summer?
   B: Yes, we ………………………………………… (go) to Italy in June.

6. Don’t play with those matches; you ……………………………………… burn yourself.

7. A: Whose is that night dress?
   B: It’s mine. I ………………………………………… (wear) it at John’s graduation party.

8. A: Why did you call your grandma?
   B: I ……………………………………………….. (visit) her at the weekend.

9. If your passport isn’t valid any more, you ………………………………………… (not / be able to) go abroad this month.

10.A: What are you doing with that brush?
    B: I ……………………………………………… (paint) my room.

11.A: Why are you wearing your anorak?
    B: I ……………………………………………… (go) out.

12.I don’t know the meaning of this word so I …………………………………………… (look) it up in the dictionary.

13.Look out! You ……………………………………… (hurt) yourself with that knife.

    B: Have you? Wait there and I ………………………………………… (get) an aspirin for you.

15.Mother: Your face is dirty.
    Child : All right. I ……………………………………………… (wash) it.

16.A: What time …………………… the next bus …………………… (arrive)?
    B: 13 minutes later.

17……………………. you ………………………. (open) the door for me, please?

18.We’re early. The film …………………………… (start) at 2:30. Why don’t we go and have something to drink?

19.He ………………………………………. (call) the police as soon as he gets home.

20.A: What ………………………. you ………………………… (do) with that dress?
    B: I ……………………………………………… (shorten) the skirt.

B) Use the correct form of the FUTURE TENSE:

1. A: Oh! You’ve got a ticket for the party.
   B: Yes. I ………………………………………… (see) it on Friday.

2. A: Tea or coffee?
   B: I …………………………………………. (have) coffee, please.

3. There isn’t any cloud in the sky. It ……………………. (be) a lovely day.
4. We …………………………… (win) the match. We’re playing really well.
5. The festival …………………………… (last) for ten days.
6. I ……………………………………… (have) a meal with a few friends. There
………………………… (be) about ten of us.
7. Phil ………………………………… (come) round us tomorrow. We …………………
(be) at the airport at 9:30.
8. Why don’t you come with us. I’m sure you ……………………………………… (enjoy) the
show.
9. That ……………………………………… (not / cost) more than $50.
10. The museum …………………………… (open) at 9:00 everyday but tomorrow it
…………………………….. (not / be) opened at 9:00.
11. I …………………………………. (pay) it back to you as soon as I get my salary.
12. The manager said,”We …………………………………….. (have) the meeting on
Thursday.”

C) Look at Tom and Sally’s diary below. Then, use the PRESENT CONTINUOUS form to
say what their arrangements are for this week, as in the example:

Monday - go to the cinema
Tuesday - visit Sally’s parents
Wednesday - take the car to a mechanic
Thursday - buy a computer
Friday - clean the house
Saturday - have a dinner party
Sunday - go on a picnic

1. ……………………………………………
2. ……………………………………………
3. ……………………………………………
4. ……………………………………………
5. ……………………………………………
6. ……………………………………………
7. ……………………………………………

D) Fill in WILL or BE GOING TO:

1. A: Why do you need so much sugar?
   B: I ……………………………………… make a cake.
2. A: Oh no! I’ve left my purse at home and I haven’t got any money on me!
   B: Don’t worry. I ……………………………………. lend you some.
3. A: I don’t know how to use this mixer.
   B: That’s OK. I ………………………………….. show you.
4. A: Why are all these people gathered here?
   B: The Prime Minister ……………………………… open the new hospital ward.
5. A: Did you remember to buy the magazine I asked for?
   B: Sorry, I didn’t. I …………………………………. buy it when I go out again.
6. A: What’s that on your curtains?
   B: It’s a stain. I ………………………………….. take them to the dry cleaner’s
tomorrow.
7. A: These bags are very heavy. I can’t lift them.
   B: I ………………………. carry them for you.
8. A: I hear you’re going to Leeds University in September.
   B: Yes, I …………………………… study French and German.
9. A: Why don’t you tidy your room?  
B: I ………………………………….. play football in ten minutes, so I haven’t got time.
10. A: How can we get all this home?  
B: I ………………………………… ask James to come and help.
11. She has bought some wool. She ……………………………. knit a sweater.
12. A: This problem is very difficult.  
B: I ………………………. help you to solve it.
13. A: Why are you taking down all the pictures?  
B: I …………………………… paint the room.
14. I ………………………. climb that mountain one day.
15. Look at that young man. He looks very pale. He ………………………….. faint.
16. A: Why are buying that spade?  
B: I …………………………… plant some trees in my garden at the back of the house.
17. She …………………………… get better. There are positive signs.
18. I’m hungry. I ……………………………. have something to eat.
19. I ………………………………… be 38 years old next week.

E) Put the verb in to the correct from using WILL or GOING TO:

1. A: Why are you turning on the television?  
B: I ……………………………………. (watch) the news.
B: Don’t worry. That’s no problem. I ………………………………. (lend) you some.
3. Those clouds are very black, aren’t they? I think it ……………………………….. (rain).
B: Have you? Wait here and I ……………………………. (get) an aspirin for you.
5. A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?  
B: I …………………………………… (wash) the car.
6. A: I’ve decided to re-paint this room.  
B: Oh, have you? What colour ………………………………………. (you / paint) it?
7. A: Look! There’s smoke coming out of that house. It’s on fire!  
B: Good heavens! I …………………………….. call the fire-brigade immediately.
8. A: The ceiling in this room doesn’t look very safe, does it?  
B: No, it looks as if it ………………………………. (fall) down.
9. A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?  
B: Yes, I ………………………………….. (buy) something for dinner.
10. A: I can’t work out how to use this camera.  
B: It’s quite easy. I ………………………………. (show) you.
11. A: What would you like to drink – tea or coffee?  
B: I ………………………………. (have) tea, please.
12. A: Has George decided on what to do when he leaves school?  
B: Oh yes. Everything is planned. He ………………………………. (have) a holiday for a few weeks and then he ………………………………. (start) a computer programming course.
A) Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets in the PRESENT CONTINUOUS or PRESENT SIMPLE:

1. Please be quiet. I ………………………………… (try) to read the paper.
2. This is a very quiet town. Where ………………………………… (people / go) in the evenings?
3. John ……………………………… (drink) milk every night, but now he …………………… (drink) tea.
4. What ……………………………………… (you / do) with all that paper and glue?
5. I …………………………………….. (not / use) the computer at the moment so you can use it.
6. ………………………………………………. (Karen and John / ever / write) to you?

B) PRESENT CONTINUOUS or PRESENT SIMPLE in context. Put in the right form of the verb in brackets:

Laura : Hello, George! What ……………………………………… (you / do) these days?
George : Hi, Laura. I ……………………………….. (learn) French and Spanish at college. What about you?
Laura : Me? Oh, I ……………………………………….. (work) at a Travel Agency until August. George : ………………………………………. (you / like) it?
Laura : Yes, I do. I ……………………………………….. (work) in the shop most mornings, and three afternoons a week the manager ………………….. (tell) me about the travel business. I …………………… (work) quite long hours. I …………………… (not / get) home until six, but I …………………… (prefer) that to not having enough to do.
George : Yes, I …………………………… (work) hard too at the moment. It ………………… (become) more and more difficult to get a job using languages. They ………………… (ask) for higher and higher exam grades all the time.
Laura : You can do it, George. You ……………… (be) clever.
George : Thanks. Laura.

C) Put the verbs in brackets into PRESENT CONTINUOUS or PRESENT SIMPLE:

It … is … winter and the snow ………………………… (fall). It usually ………………… (snow) in January here. Betty and James ………………………………… (play) in the garden. They ……………………………………… (throw) snowballs. They …………………………………… (like) the snow very much! Their mother and father ……………………………. (not / like) it. They always …………………………… (stay) in the house when it is cold. Mother usually ………………………….. (watch) TV and Father …………………………………… (listen) to the radio or …………………………………… (read) a book. At the moment they …………………………………… (sit) in the living-room. Mother ………………………………… (write) a letter and Father …………………… (read) a book.
D) Complete the dialogue using the verbs in brackets in the correct form:

A: Why … **don’t you finish** … (you / not / finish) your homework and come and watch TV?
B: Because I …………………………………… (not / understand) it. It is too difficult.
A: Why …………………………………… (you / not / ask) your teacher to explain it?
B: Because I …………………………………… (not / like) him.
A: And why …………………………………… (you / not / like) him?
B: Well, he …………………………………… (always / shout) at me.
A: Why …………………………………… (he / shout) at you?
B: Well, I …………………………………… (not / work) in class and I ………………………… (not / do) my homework.
A: Well, no wonder he …………………………… (shout) at you. Give me your book now. We’ll try and do it together.

E) Put the words in brackets in the correct place in the sentences:

1. I …**always**….. keep ……………. my room tidy. (always)
2. Do you ……………………. go ………………….. on holiday in winter? (sometimes)
3. ……………………………….. he ……………………………. helps with the housework. (never)
4. She ………………….. plays ………………………… cards. (rarely)
5. Does she …………………… visit …………………………… his friends? (often)
6. They ……………………. don’t …………………………… eat sweets. (often)
7. We ……………………. eat …………………………… a lot of vegetables. (usually)
8. You …………………………. must …………………………. tell lies. (never)
9. She ……………………. can …………………………… answer the teacher’s questions. (always)

F) Put the verbs in brackets into PRESENT SIMPLE or PRESENT CONTINUOUS:

Caller: Good morning. …**Is** ……… (be) Mr. Green there?
Man : No, he …………………………. (not / be) here. He …………………………… (work) at the moment. He usually …………………………. (work) until 4 p.m.
Caller: What about Mrs. Green? Where …………………………. (be) she?
Man  : She ……………………………………. (do) the shopping. She always …………………………. (do) the shopping on Thursday afternoons.
Caller: Where ………………………………. (be) the children?
Man : They ……………………………………. (play) football.They always …………………………. (play) football after school.
Caller: How ……………………………………. (you / know) all this? Who are you?
Man  : I ……………………………………. (be) the burglar!

G) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense:

1. He often ……….. **brings** ……………. (bring) me flowers.
2. ……………………………….. (you / meet) Paul yesterday?
3. Father …………………………………… (work) in the garden now.
4. What …………………………………… (you / do) at the moment?
5. Mr. Jones ………………………………. (paint) his house last month.
6. She ………………………………. (go) to school on foot every day.
7. It ………………………………. (be) hot yesterday.
8. The baby ………………………………. (not / sleep) now.
9. He never ………………………………. (drive) fast.
11. She always ………………………………. (go) to church on Sunday.
12. I ………………………………. (buy) a new bicycle last week.
13. My family ………………………… (go) to the theatre yesterday.
14. Tom ………………………… (live) in London three years ago.
15. My mother ……………………… (make) some coffee now.
16. Sam …………………… (go) to the circus yesterday.
17. I ………………………… (talk) on the telephone at the moment.
18. Sally always ……………………… (help) her mother in the house.
19. I ………………………… (have) dinner in a restaurant last Friday.
20. Listen! The birds ……………………… (sing) in the garden.
21. I often ……………………… (buy) fruit from the greengrocer’s.
22. My mother ………………………… (drink) tea now.
23. Look at Tom and Jim! They ……………………… (walk) up the hill.
24. That man ………………………… (laugh) at the moment.
25. The cat ………………………… (play) with a ball now.
26. We always ……………………… (wear) warm clothes in winter.
27. He often ………………………… (eat) a sandwich at lunchtime.

H) Fill in the postcard with the correct form of the verbs:

Dear Joe,
Hello from Hawaii. …**We’re having** …(have) a great time.
The sun ………….. (shine) and we ………….. (enjoy) every minute of our vacation. Jack …………… (sit) on the beach. He ………….. (watch) the children. The water ………….. (be) warm, but I’m lazy. So I ………….. (sit) on the sand and ………….. (write) this postcard to you. We ………….. (get) very tan. Oh, and Jack ………….. (learn) to surf. Are you surprised? I am.
Wish you were here.

Love, Jane, Jack, Billy and Sue

I) Write sentences using the verbs at the right:

**Where is everybody?**

1. Harry and Jennifer are outside.
………………….. (do homework)

2. The dog’s outside too.
……………………… (make dinner)

3. Larry’s in the dining room.
………………………… (talk to a friend)

4. Sally’s in the bathroom.
……………………………… (set the table)

5. Dad’s in the kitchen.
………………………………… (take a shower)

6. Mom’s on the phone.
…………………………………… (run after the ball)

7. I’m at my desk.
…………………………………….. (play baseball)
J) Fill in the blanks to complete the movie review. Use the correct tense of the verbs given:

E.T. by JOE BERNES

Last night, I saw a good movie. The title of the movie was **E.T.**. It was an excellent film. To my surprise, I **laughed** … (laugh), I .......................... (cry), and I .......................... (worry) about the little creature from space, and I completely .......................... (enjoy) the show.

The story is about an extraterrestrial person named E.T. He .......................... (land) on earth in a flying saucer. But his space ship .......................... (depart) without him. A little American boy .......................... (discover) E.T. They .......................... (play) together and they .......................... (like) each other a lot. But E.T. .......................... (miss) his home, He .......................... (want) to go back. He .......................... (plan) his return trip, but then …

Well, go and see this excellent summer film and find out about E.T.

K) Write the questions. Use WHEN, WHERE, WHO or WHAT:

1. A: We went to California on our vacation.
   B: Really? … **Where did you stay** .......................... (you / stay)?
   A: In a hotel in Santa Monica.

2. A: The children visited the usual tourist attractions.
   B: Oh, yeah? .......................... (they / see)?
   A: Oh, they went to Disneyland, the San Diego zoo, and a movie studio.

3. A: My wife played a lot of tennis.
   B: .......................... (she / play) with?
   A: She played with our oldest son.

4. A: I really enjoyed the trip. We even stayed a few extra days.
   B: .......................... (you / plan) to come home?
   A: Well, we planned to come home on Monday, but we didn’t get back until Friday.

L) Fill in the blanks to complete the postcard. Use the PAST TENSE form of the verbs given:

Dear Mom,

I’m having a wonderful time. Last night I **went** … (go) to the Hollywood Bowl with some friends. We ............ (take) a special bus and ............ (get) there easily. A friend ............ (buy) some wine and we also ............ (bring) a picnic basket. So we ............ (find) our seats and ............ (eat) our picnic. Then the concert ............ (begin). It ............ (be) excellent. What a night!

Love, Kris
M) Fill in the blanks to complete the letter:

Dear Betty,

Thank you for dinner last night. We ate like Kings and have a wonderful time. Charles put so much effort into the meal. It was a wonderful way to end our vacation.

Your directions were excellent. Unfortunately, Jim took the wrong street and we lost. We finally found the right street around 3:00 a.m. But we didn’t go home. Instead we go to the beach and see the sunrise. It was spectacular. We get back to the hotel around 7:00.

Again, many thanks.

Linda and Jim

N) Complete the sentences. Use the PAST TENSE form of the verbs given:

1. A: Tom and I go to see The Big Thrill yesterday.
   B: We see it last weekend. Jackie think it was horrible.
   A: So did we.

2. A: Look, Uncle Tom get me a violin.
   B: Last year he buy me a drum.
   A: Last Christmas he bring me a doll from Japan.
   B: Yeah, and you break it the day after.

3. A: I have my umbrella at home again and it’s really raining hard.
   B: I have the same problem. I lend one to my boss last week. I guess she keep it.

4. A: Mom have to pick up Kevin at the train station. She take the dog with her.
   B: No, she didn’t. I just see him. He was swimming in the lake.

O) Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use SIMPLE PRESENT, PRESENT CONTINUOUS, or SIMPLE PAST.

1. I get up at eight o’clock yesterday morning.
2. Mark talk to John on the phone last night.
3. Mark talk to John on the phone right now.
4. Mark talk to John on the phone every day.
5. Jim and I eat lunch at the cafeteria two hours ago.
6. We eat lunch at the cafeteria every day.
7. I go to bed early last night.
8. My roommate study Spanish last year.
9. Sue write a letter to her parents yesterday.
10. Sue write a letter to her parents every week.
11. Sue is in her room right now. She ……………………... (sit) at her desk. She
………………………… (write) a letter to her boyfriend.
12. Marianne ……………… (do) her homework last night.
13. Yesterday I ………………… (see) Dick at the library.
14. I …………………… (have) a dream last night. I …………………... (dream)
about my friends. I …………………... (sleep) for eight hours.
15. Alice …………………… (smoke) a cigarette after class yesterday.
16. My wife ………………… (come) home around five every day.
17. Yesterday she ………………… (come) home at 5:15.
18. Our teacher ………………… (stand) in the middle of the room right now.
19. Uor teacher ………………… (stand) in the front of the room yesterday.
20. John usually ………………… (sit) in the back of the room, but yesterday he
……………………… (sit) in the front row. Today he ………………… (be) absent.
He ………………… (be) absent two days ago too.

P) Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses. Use SIMPLE PRESENT,
PRESENT CONTINUOUS, or SIMPLE PAST.

1. I ……………………………... (go / not) to a movie last night. I …………………... (stay)
home.
2. Fred ……………………………. (come / not) to class every day.
3. Sue …………………………… (read) a book right now. She …………………... (watch / not) TV.
4. I ……………………………... (finish / not) my homework last night. I …………………... (go)
to bed early.
5. Jane ……………………………... (stand / not) up right now. She …………………... (sit) down.
6. It ……………………………... (rain / not) right now. The rain …………………... (stop)
a few minutes ago.
7. The weather ………………… (be / not) cold today, but it ………………… (be) cold
yesterday.
8. Mary and I ………………………. (go / not) shopping yesterday. We …………………... (go)
shopping last Monday.
9. I …………………... (go) to a movie last night, but I ………………………… (enjot / not) it.
10. I …………………... (write) a letter to my girlfriend yesterday, but I …………………...
………………... (write / not) a letter to her last week.
11. My husband ………………………. (come / not) home for dinner last night. he
……………………… (stay) at his office.
12. The children ………………………. (go / not) home for dinner last night. They …………………
(sleep) now.
13. We ……………...... (be) late for the movie last night. The movie …………………
(start) at 7:00, but we ……………………………... (arrive / not) until 7:15.
14. He …………………... (dance) with Mary now.
15. She usually …………………... (take) the bus to school.
16. Her husband never …………………... (remember) her birthday.
17. We …………………... (watch) a film on television at the moment.
WORKSHEET 21

SUBJECT: Tenses (Rewrite or Combine)

A) Change the tense of the following:

1. They often play cards.
   a) When I saw them,…. When I saw them, they were playing cards.
   b) for two hours ……. They have been playing cards for two hours.
   c) While we were studying maths, ………………………………………...
   d) three hours ago ……………………………………………………………
   e) on Saturday nights …………………………………………………………
   f) at the moment

2. John copies two cassettes everyday.
   a) since 8 o’clock ……………………………………………………………
   b) at present ……………………………………………………………
   c) next Saturday …………………………………………………………
   d) already ……………………………………………………………
   e) yesterday ……………………………………………………………

3. Kathy is writing a letter now.
   a) every two weeks …………………………………………………………
   b) while we were playing …………………………………………………
   c) when she is alone ………………………………………………………
   d) just ………………………………………………………………………
   e) next month ……………………………………………………………
   f) last week ……………………………………………………………

4. He usually reads magazines.
   a) for an hour ……………………………………………………………
   b) when I saw him ………………………………………………………
   c) every morning ………………………………………………………
   d) now ………………………………………………………………………
   e) yet ………………………………………………………………………

5. The children are doing their homework.
   a) yet ………………………………………………………………………
   b) just ………………………………………………………………………
   c) every evening ………………………………………………………
   d) when she came ………………………………………………………
B) Read the passage and ask questions:

Janet Johnson is a film actress. She made several animal films. She is talking about an elephant called HEKIMA.

“I met Hekima when I went to Africa seven years ago. We were in Tanzania and we were making a film about elephants. When we arrived, we saw three young elephants. They were playing together. Hekima was small, friendly and intelligent. We called her Hekima because it means “wisdom”. Hekima was a great actress, and the film made her famous. After we finished the film we left Africa. I thought I’d never see Hekima again. But she left Africa, too. She came to a zoo in the USA. I was working in New York when I heard about that. She was happy when she saw me. She was playing happily. I think she remembered me.”

1. ___________________________________________________________?
   Janet went to Africa seven years ago.
2. ___________________________________________________________?
   Janet was making a film in Tanzania.
3. ___________________________________________________________?
   The elephants were playing when they arrived.
4. ___________________________________________________________?
   Because Hekima was an intelligent elephant.
5. ___________________________________________________________?
   It means “wisdom”.
6. ___________________________________________________________?
   Hekima was in a zoo in the USA while Janet was working in New York.
7. ___________________________________________________________?
   Hekima was playing when Janet went to see her.

C) Match the sentences using WHILE and PAST CONTINUOUS / PAST SIMPLE:

**A**
1. I (burn) my finger.
2. I (break) a cup.
3. My car (break down).
4. I (see) a shark.
5. My clothes (get) dirty.
6. I (break) a tooth.

**B**
1. I (drive) to work.
2. I (eat) a nut.
3. I (cook) the dinner.
4. I (do) the washing up.
5. I (swim) in the sea.
6. I (clean) my room.

1. …I burnt my finger while I was cooking the dinner. ……
2. …………………………………………………………………………
3. …………………………………………………………………………
4. …………………………………………………………………………
5. …………………………………………………………………………
6. …………………………………………………………………………

D) Use the correct form of the verbs:

1. The Bartons ………… (go) to the mountains last weekend. While they …………. (have) lunch, a man …………… (fall) down the tree. They …………………… (take) him to the hospital in their car. They ……………………………… (visit) him twice in the hospital since that time. The man ………………… (be) better now and the doctors say he ……………………… (leave) the hospital soon. When The Bartons ………………… (visit) him yesterday, they ……………………… (take) him a bunch of flowers. The man ………………… (be) very happy and ……………………… (thank) them. Mr. Barton now says he ……………………………… (spend) the next weekend at the seaside and he
(hope) there (not / be) any more accidents.

2. I (finish) school last month and I (not / have) a job yet, but fortunately I (have) a job interview tomorrow. I usually (get) up early so often (sleep) at around half past ten. I (be) a little excited last night and because of this I (want / watch) TV before I (go) to bed. There (be) a film about birds on TV and while I (sit) on the sofa, I (fall) asleep. (have) a terrible dream? Well, I (have) one last night. In my dream I (be) a parrot and my apartment flat (be) on the tenth floor of a big building. A big cat (want / catch) me so I (begin / fly). I (have) nowhere (go) because the door (be) locked. Suddenly the cat (attack) me. It nearly (kill) me. While I (shout) in pain a voice (say), “(see) my books? I can’t find them.” When I (open) my eyes, I (feel) very happy (see) my sister. Of course she (not / understand) the reason but I (give) her a big kiss.

E) REWRITE or COMBINE the following:

1. It rained this morning. The children played in the garden. (while)
   ..........................................................

2. What did you do? The doorbell rang. (when)
   ..........................................................

3. I walked along Main Street. I realized a man behind me. (when)
   ..........................................................

4. I started to play football when I was five. (since)
   ..........................................................

5. The windows are dirty. I last cleaned them last month. (since)
   ..........................................................

6. He last shaved a week ago. (for)
   ..........................................................

7. Maybe the train leaves at six. I don’t catch it. (If)
   ..........................................................

8. We slept last night. The robber stole all the jewellery. (as)
   ..........................................................

9. Tom prefers learning French to learning Japanese. (would rather)
   ..........................................................

10. Angela looks after many children. It keeps her busy. (Gerund)
    ..........................................................

11. He went to London. He wanted to work there. (to)
    ..........................................................

12. They had a picnic. The forest caught fire. (as)
    ..........................................................

13. No sound could be heard. The walls were very thick. (because)
    ..........................................................

14. My bed is terribly hard. I can’t sleep well. (so …… that)
    ..........................................................
15. The shopkeeper doesn’t let the children put their fingers on the glass while they are looking at the sweets. (be allowed to)

16. My mother would rather cook than iron. (prefer)

17. We bought this house in 1990. (since)

18. He may come late. He will call us. (If)

19. Paris isn’t as crowded as New York. (comparison)

20. My father would rather read newspaper than watch TV. (prefer)

F) Look at the chart and make sentences as in the examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>people / travel</th>
<th>YESTERDAY on horseback</th>
<th>TODAY by plane</th>
<th>TOMORROW in spaceships</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>children / play</td>
<td>hide-and-seek</td>
<td>computer games</td>
<td>with robots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man / explore</td>
<td>the poles</td>
<td>solar system</td>
<td>galaxies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we / live in</td>
<td>villages</td>
<td>modern cities</td>
<td>undersea cities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wives / use</td>
<td>handmade tools</td>
<td>electric appliances</td>
<td>intelligent robots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vehicles / run by</td>
<td>horses</td>
<td>petrol</td>
<td>water / electricity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. People traveled on horseback yesterday.
   People are traveling by plane today.
   People will travel in spaceships tomorrow.

2. ......................................................
   ......................................................
   ......................................................

3. ......................................................
   ......................................................
   ......................................................

4. ......................................................
   ......................................................
   ......................................................

5. ......................................................
   ......................................................
   ......................................................

6. ......................................................
   ......................................................
   ......................................................
SUBJECT: Correct Tense or Voice

A) Fill in the blanks using the CORRECT TENSE or VOICE:

1. Listen! An old tune ...........................................(play) on the radio.
2. Nobody ...........................................(help) Mr. Green while the garage ...........................................(paint).
3. Mary ...........................................(have) a bath before she ...........................................(call) by one of her friends yesterday.
4. The accountant ...........................................(look) sad because the bills ...........................................(pay) yet.
5. He felt sorry when he ...........................................(realize) that his stamp collection ...........................................(steal).
6. If I ...........................................(be) him, I ...........................................(not / treat) my father like that. He will be sorry for that in the future.
7. If she ...........................................(see) me, she ...........................................(get) angry with me, because I had promised to call her out but I didn’t.
8. He ...........................................(stop / smoke) since he ...........................................(have) a heart attack.
9. As soon as she ...........................................(finish / change) the baby’s nappy, she ...........................................(take) the children to school.
10. He said his car ...........................................(mend) already ...........................................(take) to the City Hospital.
11. She said she ...........................................(open) her first exhibition the following month.
12. Mary and Joe want ...........................................(go) to the shore which ...........................................(sound) like a good idea to me.
13. He ...........................................(not / wake up) on time unless he ...........................................(use) an alarm clock.

B) Supply the CORRECT TENSE or VOICE:

1. I ...........................................(play) the piano since I ...........................................(be) six.
2. ...........................................(not / look) behind you. I think, someone ...........................................(follow) us.
3. A: Did you hear the accident?
   B: No, what ...........................................(happen)?
   A: A cyclist ...........................................(hit) by a taxi driver in front of the post office.
   B: OK, then?
   A: Someone ...........................................(call) an ambulance and the cyclist ...........................................(take) to the City Hospital.
   B: ...........................................(have) an operation?
   A: No, he ...........................................(say) that he ...........................................(have to / stay) in hospital about two weeks.
   B: ...........................................(inform) about the accident yet?
   A: They ...........................................(already / phone) from the hospital.
   B: ...........................................(be) his friends in hospital now?
   A: No, his friends ...........................................(not / allow) ...........................................(see) him.
      They ...........................................(wait) right in front of the hospital ...........................................(hear) a piece of news, at the moment.
4. Before Christmas all the shops and houses decorate with cards and Christmas trees. Presents buy for the relatives and friends.

5. Linda look very happy now, because her boyfriend just / give her an engagement ring.

6. Dinner must / cook before we go out.

7. April 23rd give as a holiday to the Turkish children by Mustafa Kemal Atatürk.

8. The old man be in prison for twenty years, by the time he die last year.

9. When Jane arrive late for the interview, she realize that the Director leave.

10. ... you see Ann this morning? (It’s still morning.)

11. ... you see Ann this morning? (It’s evening.)

12. I try to learn English for three years but I not / succeed.

C) Supply the CORRECT TENSE or VOICE:

1. After he decide / give up smoking, he begin / carry a pocket of sweets in his pocket prevent him from smoking.

2. He must have a break. He drive for hours.

3. My cousin, Tom just / finish his military service. He look for a good job since then. Yesterday he receive a letter from his old boss. In his letter, he says he needs him again, but Tom not / want / work with him. Because they have some problems before he leave his job.

4. After they learn the new words last term, they start the course book.

5. Please don’t disturb us, we record the Director’s conversation.

6. Just as I get up my brother take a photo of me.

7. Steve have a lot of girlfriends by the time he married.

8. We are quite anxious about Jane now. She leave home a fortnight ago to spend her vacation with her friends but she write to us yet.

9. They live in bad conditions since the war start.

10. Before I come to the USA, I study English in my own country.

11. I not / have any trouble with my car so far.

12. The building at the top of the hill build in 1920. A number of changes make since then.

13. When the boss come in the office, the letters type by the secretary.

14. Barbara is a writer. She already write several novels. A few years ago, she give the Pulitzer Prize.

15. Tom’s father go / swim everyday. He says swimming be really good to keep fit.
16. Everybody …………………………………… (know) him as an honest man since he …………………………………… (start / live) here.

17. A: What is the crowd?
   B: A little boy …………………………………… (kidnap) by two men and the police …………………………………… (look) for them along the river since then.

18. All dinner …………………………………… (eat) before they …………………………………… (finish) the conversation.

19. As it …………………………………… (rain), a car accident …………………………………… (happen) on Main Street.

20. The bills …………………………………… (pay) yet.

21. The tourists …………………………………… (wait) for hours at the airport by the time their plane …………………………………… (take off).

22. Most of the houses …………………………………… (pull) down last month, but they …………………………………… (not / touch) the old shop at the corner yet.

23. He …………………………………… (be) in different countries before he …………………… (arrest) by the police.

D) Correct Tense:

1. I …………………………………… (never / eat) Chinese food. I ……………. (be) very excited now because tomorrow night we …………………………….. (go) to a Chinese Restaurant. My nother ……………………………………. (phone) the restaurant now for reservations.

2. David ………………… (drive) a taxi ………………… (earn) money.

3. A: Would you like …………………………….. (listen) to music?
   B: Yes, of course. I ……………………………………….. (want / hear) Sting’s latest cassette.

4. Alice ………………….. (be) upset last night because her father ………………… (not / let) her ………………………. (give) a party at home.

5. Tarkan ………………………………………… (give) a concert next month.

6. A: Mmm. The cake ……………………….. (smell) delicious.
   B: Yes, my mother …………………………………. (just / make) it. We ………………… (like / have) tea at 5:00 pm everyday.

7. A: ………………. your uncle ……………………. (work) that company?
   B: Yes, he …………………………………… (work) here since he …………………………………… (come) back from the USA. He …………………………………… (stay) there for three years and …………………………….. (work) as an accountant. But now, he …………………………………… (want / change) his job. He …………………………………… (look for) another job at present. He …………………………………… (have) a job interview next Tuesday.

8. How long ………………. you …………………. (know) that teacher ………………… (wear) a white shirt and a brown jacket?

9. A: Where …………………. (be) your friends?
   B: They …………………………………… (sit) at the café …………………………….. (wait) for us.

E) Supply the CORRECT TENSE or VOICE:

1. These magazines …………………………………… (read) by 1.000.000 people every week.

2. Where ………………………………. (sell) in this town?

3. The trees …………………………………… (must / cut) once a day.

4. Wait a minute! I ……………………………….. (have) a bath.

5. This carpet …………………………………… (already / clean).
7. ....................the car ..................................(check) by the mechanic yesterday?
8. The helicopter ...........................................(fly) to Izmir when it suddenly
.........................(crash) last month.
9. How many books .....................................(sell) so far this month?
10. Your watch ..............................................(mend) at the moment.
11. While Mr. Jackson .................................(cross) the road yesterday, she
......................(hit) by a truck.
12. A new school ..............................(build) next to the bank next month.
13. Mike ............................................................(live) in the same place since he
..........................(come) to London.
14. The house .................................................(paint) when it began to rain yesterday.
15. His shirt looks dirty. I think it ..............................(not / clean)
since last Tuesday.
16. Sally .............................................(not / be) at home now. She ..............................
.........................(just / go) out.
17. If you took these pills, you ...........................(get) well.
18. ...........................................................(Can / he / play) football when he was ten
years old?
19. This hospital .............................................(build) in 1980.
SUBJECT: Passive Form

A) Fill in the PASSIVE in the appropriate tense:

1. (TV / invent / Baird) …….. TV was invented by Baird. ............
2. (Pyramids / build / Egyptians) ..............................................
3. (milk / produce / cows) ....................................................
4. (coffee / grow / in Brazil) ..................................................
5. (chopsticks / use / in China) .............................................
6. (plants / water / every day) ..............................................
7. (the thief / arrest / policeman / yesterday) ..........................
8. (the injured man / take to a hospital / now) .........................
9. (the car / repair / tomorrow) .........................................
10. (the letter / send / last week) ........................................

B) Put the verbs in brackets into PRESENT SIMPLE PASSIVE:

There is a chimpanzee which ….. is called ….. (call) “Bubbles”. It ….. (own) by Michael Johnson. It ….. (keep) in his home. It ….. (feed) every day by Michael Johnson himself. It ….. (always / dress) in funny clothes. It ….. (said) that “Bubbles” is Michael Johnson’s only friend.

C) Look at the Hotel Information table and write sentences as in the example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hotel Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breakfast</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Pierrot’s Restaurant 7-9:30 am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rooms</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maid Service daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Newspapers – Telephone calls</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the Reception Desk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Breakfast / serve – where and when?
   *Breakfast is served in Pierrot’s Restaurant between 7 and 9:30 am.*
2. Dinner / serve – where and when?
   …………………………………………………………………………………
3. Newspapers / sell – where?
   …………………………………………………………………………………
4. Telephone calls / can make – where?
   …………………………………………………………………………………
5. Rooms / clean – who by and how often?
   …………………………………………………………………………………
6. Hot water / supply – when?
   …………………………………………………………………………………
7. Films / show – where and when?
   …………………………………………………………………………………
D) Put the verbs in brackets into PAST SIMPLE PASSIVE:

Two men ….. **were seen** ….. (see) breaking into a house in my street last night. The police ….. (call) and they arrived very quickly. One man ….. (catch) immediately. The other escaped, but he ….. (find) very soon. Both men ….. (take) to the police station where they ….. (question) separately by a police officer. The two men ….. (charge) with burglary.

E) Turn from ACTIVE into PASSIVE:

1. The gardener has planted some trees. ….. **Some trees have been planted by the gardener**.
2. Doctor Brown will give you some advice. …..
3. A famous designer will redecorate the hotel. …..
4. Steven Spielberg directed “E.T.” …..
5. Someone has broken the crystal vase. …..
6. His parents have brought him up to be polite. …..
7. Fleming discovered penicillin. …..
8. They will advertise the product on television. …..
9. Someone is remaking that film. …..
10. Picasso painted that picture. …..

F) Using the PASSIVE, ask questions to which the bold type words are answers:

1. **Columbus** discovered America. ….. **Who was America discovered by** …..?
2. We keep money **in a safe**. …..?
3. **A bee** stung him. …..?
4. They speak **Italian** in Italy. …..?
5. They have taken **his aunt** to hospital. …..?
6. **The boys** damaged the television. …..?
7. **Da Vinci** painted the Mona Lisa. …..?
8. He invited **30 people** to his party. …..?
9. They grow bananas **in Africa**. …..?

G) Turn from ACTIVE into PASSIVE:

1. You must leave the bathroom tidy. ….. **The bathroom must be left tidy**. …..
2. You should water this plant daily. …..
3. Our neighbor ought to paint the garage. …..
4. I have to return these books to the library. …..
5. You must extinguish your cigarettes. …..
6. You must dry-clean this shirt. …..
7. Someone will pay you in ten days. …..
8. You can improve your health with more exercise.

9. People must obey the law.

10. The cleaner is going to mop the kitchen floor.

H) Turn from ACTIVE into PASSIVE:

1. Someone is helping her with the housework.

10. A pickpocket robbed me.

11. The mail-order company sent Mrs. Green a parcel.

12. A dog is chasing the child.

13. My friend sent me an invitation.

14. The farmer is building a new barn.

15. The secretary has given Mrs. Jones some letters.

16. The traffic warden had already given him a ticket for illegal parking.

17. Someone had broken our door down.

18. They chose him as the best actor of the year.

I) Turn form ACTIVE into PASSIVE as in the example:

1. He gave me a present.
   a) I was given a present.
   b) A present was given to me.

2. The waiter will bring us the bill.
   a) ........................................................
   b) ........................................................

3. The Queen presented him with a medal.
   a) ........................................................
   b) ........................................................

4. Her mother bought Mary some sweets.
   a) ........................................................
   b) ........................................................

5. Bob has sold Ted a second-hand car.
   a) ........................................................
   b) ........................................................

6. Larry is going to send a letter to Tom.
   a) ........................................................
   b) ........................................................
J) Rewrite the following passage in the PASSIVE:

Some people saw a UFO in the sky above London last night. They reported it to the police. The army sent a helicopter to look at it more closely. The UFO shot the helicopter down and killed both men in it. People have given photographs of the UFO to the police. Experts are looking at them now.

K) Rewrite the following passage in the PASSIVE:

Somebody has stolen a bus from outside the school. Some children saw the thief. The police are searching for the bus now. They will use the children’s descriptions to catch the thief.

L) Rewrite the following passage in the PASSIVE:

Someone broke into a local jewellery shop yesterday. The owner had just locked up the shop when a robber with a gun threatened him. The robber told him to unlock the shop and give him all the diamonds in the safe. Then the robber tied him up. The police have organized a search for the robber. They hope they will find him in a few days. Doctors are treating the owner of the shop for shock.

M) Rewrite the following passage in the PASSIVE:

My uncle painted this picture. Someone has offered him a lot of money for it. He will deliver the painting tomorrow. When they give him the money he will tell them the truth. He painted it one night while he was sleepwalking!

N) Rewrite the following passage in the PASSIVE:

Our school is organizing a contest. The teachers will choose the best project about the environment. The students must include pictures and drawings in their projects. The students will also have to do all the writing themselves. The school will give the winner a set of encyclopaedias.

O) Make questions in the PASSIVE from these cues:

Example: Where / our local newspaper / print

Where is our local newspaper printed?

1. How many / photos / store / in the photo library
   ...........................................................................................................................................?
2. photographs / develop / in the photo library
   ...........................................................................................................................................?
3. Where / messages / receive
   ...........................................................................................................................................?
4. the Daily Mirror / print / in Manchester
   ...........................................................................................................................................?
5. this magazine / sell / in Spain
   ...........................................................................................................................................?
6. Why / newspapers / send abroad
   ...........................................................................................................................................?
7. When / the newspaper / print
   ...........................................................................................................................................?
8. How / newspapers / deliver
   ...........................................................................................................................................?
9. Where / stories / write
   …………………………………………………………………………………………… ?
10. a lot of paper / use / for each issue
    …………………………………………………………………………………………… ?

P) Write sentences in the PASSIVE. Use these phrases:

* in the sea               * at school            * in the kitchen               * at the post office
* in Australia           * in Italy               * at weddings                  * in Mediterranean countries
* in the cinema

Example: olives / grow
   Olives are grown in Mediterranean countries.

1. films / show
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
2. meals / cook
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
3. stamps / sell
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
4. pandas / find
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
5. Italian / speak
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
6. confetti / throw
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
7. lessons / teach
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
8. sharks / find
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
A) Read each sentence. Then make two new sentences in the PASSIVE:

1. People say Tom Cruise is the richest movie star.
   a) **It is said that** Tom Cruise is the richest movie star.
   b) Tom Cruise **is said to be** the richest movie star.

2. Everybody thinks that Hakan is a good football player.
   a) It ........................................................................
   b) Hakan .................................................................

3. They say that his books are still popular.
   a) It ........................................................................
   b) His books ............................................................

4. They report that at least 10.000 dolphins are caught in the nets of tuna fishers every year.
   a) It ........................................................................
   b) At least 10.000 dolphins ........................................

5. They estimate that 1500 square kilometers of rainforests is cut every year.
   a) It ........................................................................
   b) 1500 square kilometers of rainforests .....................

6. We knew that pencil lead is made from graphite, clay, water and wax.
   a) It ........................................................................
   b) Pencil lead ............................................................

7. They reported that the railway line was buried under tons of rock and earth.
   a) It ........................................................................
   b) The railway line .....................................................

8. People don’t think that inflation will go down.
   a) It ........................................................................
   b) Inflation ................................................................

9. People expect that the third bridge will be built over the Bosphorus Strait.
   a) It ........................................................................
   b) The third bridge ....................................................

10. People believe that he is living abroad.
    a) It ........................................................................
    b) He ......................................................................

B) Read each sentence. Then make two new sentences in the PASSIVE:

1. People expect that taxes will be reduced soon.
   a) It ........................................................................
   b) Taxes ..................................................................
2. People say that the monument is over 2000 years old.
   a) It .............................................................
   b) The monument ...........................................

3. People expect that the president will resign.
   a) It .............................................................
   b) The president ............................................

4. People think the fire started at about 8 o’clock.
   a) It .............................................................
   b) The fire .....................................................

5. Journalists reported that seven people had been injured in the fire.
   a) It .............................................................
   b) Seven people .............................................

6. People say the bridge is unsafe.
   a) It .............................................................
   b) The bridge ................................................

C) REPORT these rumours:

1. People say that the actress Tania Revesky has refused a part in the film Volcano.
   a) It is said ....................................................
   b) The actress Tania Revesky .............................

2. Her friends have reported that the newsreader Ann Slater is furious at losing her job.
   a) It .............................................................
   b) The newsreader Ann Slater ............................

3. Lots of people believe that The Prime Minister and his wife are getting divorced.
   a) It .............................................................
   b) The Prime Minister and his wife ....................

4. Journalists have said that The footballer Gary Johnson earns $ 1 million a year.
   a) It .............................................................
   b) The footballer Gary Johnson .........................
A) Put the following sentences into the PASSIVE VOICE:

1. Someone has already paid the electrician for his work.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
2. They taught him French and gave him a dictionary.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
3. When we first met, they had already offered me a job at the bank.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
4. A man requested the stranger to leave the meeting.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
5. A young woman asked the rest of us to be there at eight o’clock.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
6. They had eaten all the dinner before they finished the conversation.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
7. Who wrote it?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
8. The author has written a special edition for children.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
9. Did the idea interest you?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
10. Why didn’t they mend the roof before it fell in?
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
11. The burglars had cut a huge hole in the steel door.
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
12. The organizers will exhibit the paintings till the end of the month.
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
13. When did they ring the church bells?
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
14. Does listening to music disturb you?
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………

B) Read the following sentences and write another one with the same meaning:

1. It is believed that the wanted man is living in New York.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
2. It is said that many people are homeless after the floods.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
3. It is expected that the government will lose this election.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
4. It is known that the Prime Minister is in favour of the new law.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
5. It is believed that the thieves got in through the kitchen window.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
6. It is thought that the prisoner escaped by climbing over the wall.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
7. It is claimed that he drove through the town at 90 miles an hour.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
8. It is reported that two people were seriously injured in the accident.

9. It is said that three men were arrested after the explosion.

10. It is believed that Maria will not win the prize.

11. It is considered that the 2008 Olympic Games will be held in Turkey.

12. It is said that our teacher is 55 years old.

13. It is thought that Tom didn’t steal their rings.

14. It is claimed that this examination will be the most difficult one.

15. It is believed that John will marry Ann at the end of this month.

16. It is expected that people will live in Mars in 2050.

C) Change these sentences into PASSIVE FORM:

1. People believe that the strike will end soon.

2. People believe that the thieves got through the kitchen window.

3. People say that the company is losing a lot of money.

4. When is he going to pay the taxes?

5. Who has designed these buildings?

6. How much do they spend on these activities?

7. They broke a lot of plates while they were dancing?

8. Who invented the electric bulb?

9. People believe that they are secret agents.

10. People think that he takes harmful drugs.

11. Did they give you a great reception?

12. Nobody sends her a card at Christmas.

13. Did anyone call an ambulance after the accident?

14. Will you pay the fine?
D) Write the correct tense or voice:

Hospitals are places where people …………………………………… (examine) and ………………………………… (bring) back to good health. I’m lucky because I …………………………………..(never / take) to hospital when she ………………………………… (hit) by a car last month. Luckily no bones ………………………………… (break) but she ………………………………… (examine) carefully and x-rays ………………………………… (take). She ………………………………… (keep) there for a night and she ………………………………… (give) permission to leave the next day.

Ambulance services are also important. Patients …………………………………..(must / take) to hospital as quickly as possible. A lot of people …………………………………… (kill) in road accidents and a lot more …………………………………… (injure) but if more ambulances …………………………………… (put) into service, more lives …………………………………… (can / save).

E) Complete the sentences using PASSIVE FORMS:

1. The classroom …………………………………………………………. an hour ago.
2. The blackboard …………………………………………………………. now.
3. English …………………………………………………………………. in the world.
4. This unit …………………………………………………………………. next week.
5. No letters …………………………………………………………. since ………………………………….. 
6. His bike …………………………………………………………………. last week.
7. My car …………………………………………………………………. now.
8. After the meal ………………………………………………………….
9. She is believed ………………………………………………………….
10. He is said ……………………………………………………………….

F) Rewrite the following passage changing the suitable sentences into PASSIVE VOICE:

Jane Johnson has been worried all last week. Last Monday, she received a letter from the police. In the letter they asked her to call the police station. Jane wondered why the police wanted her, and nothing worried her anymore. There, they told her that they had found her bike. They picked it up in a small village a week ago. Somebody stole it 10 years ago, when she was a girl of fifteen. Now, they are sending it to her.
WORKSHEET 26

SUBJECT : Reported Speech

A) Change the following sentences from DIRECT to INDIRECT SPEECH:

1. He said, “I will be here at noon.”
   He said that he would be here at noon.

2. Mary said, “The train will probably arrive on time.”

3. He said, “I have to finish this report by five o’clock.”

4. The doctor said, “Mr. Smith will improve quickly.”

5. William said to me, “I am leaving in the morning.”

6. The teacher said, “Everyone has to write a composition.”

7. John said, “I saw that movie on Wednesday.”

8. Helen said, “I have read that book.”

9. Mary said to John, “I cannot go to the movie with you.”

10. John said, “I have finished studying my lesson.”

11. Mary remarked, “John speaks English well.”

12. William said to me, “I will not see Mr. Jones until Tuesday.”

13. Mr. Smith said, “I will refuse their offer.”

14. John said, “I certainly hope it won’t rain tomorrow.”

15. Henry said, “I can meet them later.”

16. The boy said, “I am only eight years old.”

17. She said to me, “The lights have gone out.”

18. The man said, “The telephone is out of order.”

19. He said, “I will never speak to her again.”

20. I said to the clerk clearly, “I have already paid that bill.”
B) REPORT what the guests said at a wedding last Saturday:

1. Miss Moore: “They’ll make a lovely couple.”
   *Miss Moore said (that) they would make a lovely couple.*

2. Mr. Smith: “They’re going to live in Brighton.”

3. Mrs. Jones: “The bride and the groom are very nice young people.”

4. Mr. Roberts: “The bride is wearing a beautiful wedding dress.”

5. Mr. Clarke: “The couple’s parents look happy.”

6. Miss Mayall: “The bride’s father has bought them a big flat.”

C) Write sentences about Jane’s trip to Paris:

1. We’re taking the nine o’clock plane.
   *Jane told me they were taking the nine o’clock plane.*

2. I’ll have to get up early.
   She said ……………………………………………………………………………

3. I don’t really like traveling by air.
   She told me ………………………………………………………………………

4. But it’s the easiest way to travel.
   But she decided …………………………………………………………………

5. We’re going to spend a week in Paris.
   She told me ………………………………………………………………………

6. I want to go up the Eiffel Tower.
   She said …………………………………………………………………………..

7. We’ve been to Paris before.
   She told me ………………………………………………………………………

8. But we didn’t see everything.
   But she said ………………………………………………………………………

9. I’ll send you a postcard.
   She said …………………………………………………………………………..

10. But I won’t write you a letter.
    But she told me …………………………………………………………………

11. I’m very excited!
    She said ………………………………………………………………………..

12. We’ll be in Paris tomorrow!
    The last thing she said was that ……………………………………………

D) REPORT the police-officer’s questions to the shop owner:

1. What’s your name?
   *The police-officer asked him what was his name was.*

2. Did you see the robbers?
   ………………………………………………………………………………………

3. What were they wearing?
   ………………………………………………………………………………………

4. How do you think they got in?
   ………………………………………………………………………………………
5. What did they take?  
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
6. Has this ever happened before?  
…………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………

D) Turn the following dialogue into REPORTED SPEECH:

Sally: Have you applied for the job?  
Sally asked Diane if she had applied for the job
Diane: Yes, I had an interview yesterday.  
Diane told her………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
Sally: How did it go?  
……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
Diane: Fine, but I’m wondering if I want the job because I will have to move to Manchester.  
……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
Sally: What will you do then?  
……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
Diane: If they offer me the job, I can’t accept it.  
……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………

E) Write what the family said at the dinner table:

1. Mother: “Does anyone want some more potatoes?”  
   Mother asked if anyone wanted some more potatoes.
2. Father: “Pass me the wine, Beth.”  
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
3. Beth: “The chicken is very nice.”  
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
4. Grandfather: “I’m going to start my diet tomorrow.”  
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
5. Grandmother: “Don’t eat with your mouth open, Sam!”  
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
6. Tim: “This is the best dinner I’ve had!”  
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
7. Jean: “Is there any more salad, Mum?”  
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
8. Sam: “I’m very hungry because I only had a sandwich for lunch today.”  
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
9. Helen: “What are we having for dessert, Mum?”  
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
   …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………

F) Gavin has worked for Bisco Supermarkets for thirty years. He can still remember his job interview after leaving school and he can remember the questions that the interview asked him:

Example: “Where do you live?”  
         “Have you worked before?”  
   She asked him where he lived.  
   She asked him if he had worked before.
1. “Why do you want the job?”  
   She asked him …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
2. “How did you hear about it?”  
   She asked him …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
3. “Are you fit?”  
   She asked him …………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
4. “Can you work on Saturdays?”
   She asked him …………………………………………………………………………
5. “How will you travel to work?”
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
6. “Have you got a bicycle?”
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
7. “How much do you expect to earn?”
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
8. “When can you start?”
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………

G) What does the policeman want to know?

1. What’s your name?
   The policeman wants to know what my name is.
2. What’s your job?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
3. Where do you work?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
4. Where do you live?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
5. Where were you yesterday?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
6. Why are you in London?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
7. When did you come?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
8. How did you come?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
9. Where’s your ticket?
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
10. Have you ever been in London?
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
11. Do you know anyone in London?
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
12. Were you in London last month?
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
13. Are you telling the truth?
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………

H) Tell your family what the doctor said:

1. “You really ought to stay in bed.”
   He said I ought to stay in bed.
2. “But you can get up for half an hour.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
3. “You can leave here on Thursday.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
4. “You ought to take some exercise.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
5. “But you shouldn’t walk too much.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
6. “You mustn’t run at all.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
SUBJECT: Reported Speech

A) Statements:

Example: The boy said, “My name is Mark.”
The boy said (that) his name was Mark.

Do the same:
1. Mary said, “I like Turkish pop music.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
2. The woman said, “It’s not my umbrella, mine is red.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
3. Tom said, “I have a sports car. It is red.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
4. Mr. Brown said, “I don’t drive a car in the rush hour.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
5. Terry said, “I eat toasts for breakfast. They are made by my mother.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
6. Sue said, “The boy is looking at us. I don’t know him.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
7. John said, “I can swim well but I don’t have enough time to swim.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
8. My brother said to me, “I don’t want to carry your books!”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
9. The teacher said, “If you don’t study regularly, you’ll fail.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
10. Mr. Green said, “I have to water my flowers twice a week.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
11. Alice said, “I used to swim well but now I don’t.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
12. Mr. Miller said, “I know your parents. I’ve met them in the meeting.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………

B) Imperatives:

Examples: * The teacher always says to us, “Study very hard.”
            The teacher always tells us TO study hard.

   * The teacher says, “Don’t talk in the class.”
         The teacher tells us NOT TO talk in the class.

Do the same:
1. Woman to the porter: “Carry my suitcases.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
2. Policeman to a man: “Describe your car.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
3. Mother to the boy: “Don’t hurt yourself.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
4. The robber to the man: “Give me your money.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
5. Teacher to the student: “Give me your book.”
6. The man to us: “Don’t park here.”
7. Woman to her husband: “Don’t forget to take your key.”
8. Mr. Smith to her son: “Don’t put your books on this desk.”
9. Young man to the young woman: “Give me one of your photographs.”
10. The man to his son: “Hurry up! Don’t miss the bus!”
11. The woman to her daughter: “Tidy your room, don’t waste your time.”

C) Wh- questions:

Examples: *“What is the time?” he asked.  
He asked me what the time was.*

*“Where do you live?” he asked Mary.  
How wanted to know where Mary lived.*

Do the same:

1. He asked, “How long does it take you to have lunch?”
2. He asked me, “What are you doing at the weekend?”
3. She asked, “Why are you late, Tom?”
4. My mother asked me, “Where is your umbrella?”
5. The secretary asked the man, “Who do you want to see, sir?”
6. The students asked, “What time does the bell ring?”
7. He asked Tom, “What kind of films do you like watching?”
8. The teacher asked the girl, “When do you have to be home?”
9. They always asked, “Why don’t you let my cat in?”
10. The passengers asked, “When did the last train leave?”
11. He asked, “What will you do tomorrow, Jane?”
D) Yes / No questions:

Examples: *“Are you busy?” he asked me.
He asked me IF I was busy.*

*“Do you like banana?” he asked his friends.
He asked his friends IF they liked banana.*

Do the same:

1. She asked, “Do you live with your family, Helen?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

2. He asked, “Can I borrow your pen, Linda?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

3. He asked me, “Does your uncle live in England?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

4. Mary asked Lucy, “Will you come to my party tomorrow?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

5. Mark asked, “Did you phone me last night, John?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

6. He asked, “Is this yours or mine, David?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

7. She always asked me, “Must you always ask me what I’m doing?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

8. The teacher asked, “Are you listening to me?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

9. Mary asked, “Do you want me to help you, Larry?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

10. The officer asked, “Are you a foreigner? Can you spell your name?”
    …………………………………………………………………………..

E) Change into INDIRECT SPEECH:

1. Bob says, “I want to play tennis this afternoon.”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

2. John says, “I haven’t seen my grandmother for a long time.”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

3. Cindy says to Alan, “Don’t come in with your dirty shoes.”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

4. My father says, “Please, help me in the garden.”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

5. “Don’t wipe your dirty fingers on my clean table cloth.” says his mother.
   …………………………………………………………………………..

6. “When does the bell ring?” asks John.
   …………………………………………………………………………..

7. Sandy asks Danny, “Why didn’t you tell her the truth?”
   …………………………………………………………………………..

8. “How long have you waited for me?”
   What does Charles ask Fiona?
   …………………………………………………………………………..

9. “Does it rain in winter in Somali?”
   What does the teacher ask?
   …………………………………………………………………………..

10. “Did you post the letter?” asks Rachel.
    …………………………………………………………………………..
F) Change into INDIRECT SPEECH:
You can use AND, BUT, BECAUSE, ADD to join the sentences.

1. Brenda said to Jimmy, “Please, turn off the TV. The film is boring.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
2. “Wash your face and say GOOD MORNING to everybody.” says his mother.
   ……………………………………………………………………………
3. “Do your homework again. There are a lot of mistakes.” says the teacher to Kate.
   ……………………………………………………………………………
   ……………………………………………………………………………
5. “Brush your teeth. They look very dirty.” Her mother says to her.
   ……………………………………………………………………………
6. “Look out! There is a truck coming.” Kevin said to his daughter.
   ……………………………………………………………………………
   ……………………………………………………………………………
8. Mrs. Abbot told Jack, “Your hair is very long. Go and have a hair cut.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
9. Mrs. Denman says to her son, “It is very hot. Don’t play in the sun.”
   ……………………………………………………………………………
10. Mr. Newman said to Nicky, “Don’t make a lot of noise. I want to listen to the news.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
11. “Don’t turn it up. I have a headache.” says the mother.
    ……………………………………………………………………………
12. Sue told Andy, “Don’t shout! I’m not a deaf.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
13. Terry said to Ashley, “Don’t speak German. Speak English. They can’t understand you.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
14. “Please, be quiet! The baby is sleeping.” says Mrs. Newton to the children.
    ……………………………………………………………………………
    ……………………………………………………………………………
16. Mark said, “I want to buy a new car. Ours is very old and spends a lot of petrol.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
17. Tom said to Carol, “Can I borrow your dictionary. Mine is at home.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
18. “Your hands are very dirty. Go to the bathroom and wash them.” says her mother.
    ……………………………………………………………………………
19. Sandy said to Danny, “Does your mother work? I see her on the bus everyday.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
20. Tom told Jane, “I’m bored. Can we go to the cinema?”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
21. Sam said to Kate, “I’m broke. Can you lend me some money?”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
22. Mother said to her son, “Your friends are playing in the garden. Don’t you want to play with them?”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
23. Jim says to his son, “When will you go? You are very late for school.”
    ……………………………………………………………………………
24. “What have you cooked? I feel very hungry.” Tony said to his mother.
    ……………………………………………………………………………
    ……………………………………………………………………………
A) Write what the underlined word is; adjective or adverb:

1. Fast runners win races.  …… adjective ……
2. Mathematics is difficult.  ………………………
3. She’s a good typist.  ………………………
4. She behaved rudely to her boss.  ………………………
5. You’ve done well in your test.  ………………………
6. The clowns are very funny.  ………………………
7. She’s a pretty girl.  ………………………
8. He runs fast.  ………………………
9. Ann is very sad.  ………………………
10. She plays the piano beautifully.  ………………………
11. Father is very busy in his office.  ………………………
12. The doctor arrived immediately.  ………………………

B) Underline the correct item:

1. He left the room quiet / quietly.  ………………………
2. Jane works hard / hardly.  ………………………
3. He’s a very nice / nicely man.  ………………………
4. The sun is shining bright / brightly.  ………………………
5. Smoking is bad / badly for your health.  ………………………
6. She behaves very good / well.  ………………………
7. He always dresses smart / smartly.  ………………………
8. He shouted angry / angrily at me.  ………………………
9. This chair is comfortable / comfortably.  ………………………
10. He smiled sad / sadly.  ………………………
11. You drive very slow / slowly.  ………………………

C) Complete these sentences:

1. There was some heavy rain last night.  Yes, it rained very …… heavily. …………………
2. Aren’t the children quiet!  Yes, they’re working very …………………
3. James has a loud voice.  Yes, he always talks very …………………
4. Isn’t the teacher angry!  Yes, he’s shouting very …………………
5. Angela’s very happy today!  Yes, she’s laughing very …………………
6. The telephone rang in the middle of the night. Nick was very sleepy.  He answered it very …………………
7. Kate likes playing slow music.  Yes, she’s playing this piece very …………………
D) Complete the sentence with the correct word from the brackets:

Example: Mice move ……… quietly …… (quiet / quietly)

1. This exercise is ……………………. (easy / easily)
2. These people are speaking ……………………………. (quiet / quietly)
3. Mr. Brown can speak English ……………………… (good / well)
4. Tigers are …………………………… animals. (brave / bravely)
5. The footballer is …………………………… (tired / tiredly)
6. Cheetahs run …………………………… (quick / quickly)
7. She is lifting the weight …………………………… (easy / easily)
8. The children are playing …………………………… (happy / happily)
9. Tony is a …………………………… skier. (good / well)

E) Supply the proper form, ADJECTIVE or ADVERB:

1. He always does his homework …………………………………….. (careful).
2. He is a very ……………………………… (careful) student.
3. Come …………………………… (quick). We need your help.
4. You should drive more …………………………… (slow) along this road.
5. The old man walks very …………………………… (slow).
6. Helen is a very ……………………………. (slow) student.
7. Her brother, on the other hand, learns …………………………… (rapid).
8. Mr. Gonzales has a ………………………………. (permanent) visa.
9. He hopes to remain in this country …………………………… (permanent).
10. This is an …………………………… (easy) exercise.
11. I can do all of these exercises …………………………… (easy).
12. Helen works very …………………………… (hard) in her new job.
13. You walk very …………………………… (fast).
14. They are both …………………………… (serious) students.
15. They both study English very …………………………… (serious).
16. I agree with you …………………………… (complete) in that matter.
17. This apple is very …………………………… (soft).
18. She always speaks …………………………… (soft) to the child.
19. Helen is a …………………………… (beautiful) girl.
20. Her sister plays the violin …………………………… (beautiful).
WORKSHEET 29

SUBJECT: Adjectives ending –ing or -ed

A) Choose the correct form:

1. I enjoyed the book. It was very interested / interesting.
2. Are you interested / interesting in art?
3. I thought the story was quite amused / amusing.
4. They were shocked / shocking when they heard the news.
5. We were all very worried / worrying when he didn’t come home.
6. It was surprising / surprising that she didn’t come to the meeting.
7. I usually find football rather bored / boring.
8. Are you frightened / frightening of spiders?

B) Complete the sentences. Use adjectives formed by adding –ING or –ED to the words in brackets.

1. I find it quite ………………………. to talk in front of a group of people. (embarrass)
2. I think reading newspapers is ……………………… . (depress)
3. I’m ……………………….. in all kinds of sport. (interest)
4. I find walking in the countryside very ……………………….. . (relax)
5. I think learning a language is very ………………………. . (interest)
6. I get ………………………… when people smoke in restaurants. (annoy)
7. I don’t normally get ……………………….. when I watch horror films. (frighten)
8. I don’t get ……………………….. very easily. (embarrass)

C) Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word given + the ending –ING or –ED:

1. The film wasn’t as good as we had expected. (disappoint-)
   a) The film was ……………………….
   b) We were ………………………. with the film.
2. Diana teaches young children. It’s a very hard job but she enjoys it. (exhaust-)
   a) She enjoys her job but it’s often ……………………….. .
   b) At the end of a day’s work, she is often ……………………….. .
3. It’s been raining all day. I hate this weather. (depress-)
   a) This weather is ……………………….
   b) This weather makes me ……………………….
   c) It’s silly to get ………………………..
4. Clare is going to the United States next month. She has never been there before. (excit-)
   a) It will be an ………………………. experience for her.
   b) Going to new places is always ……………………….. .
   c) She is really ………………………. about going to the United States.

D. Choose the correct word:

1. I was disappointing / disappointed with the film. I had expected it to be better.
2. Are you interesting / interested in football?
3. The football match was quite exciting / excited. I enjoyed it.
4. It’s sometimes embarrassing / embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.
5. Do you easily get embarrassing / embarrassed?
6. I had never expected to get the job. I was really **amazing/amazed** when I was offered it.
7. She has really learnt very fast. She has made **astonishing/astonished** progress.
8. I didn’t find the situation funny. I was not **amusing/amused**.
9. It was a really terrifying/terrified experience. Afterwards everybody was very **shocking/shocked**.
10. Why do you always look so **boring/bored**? Is your life really so **boring/bored**?
11. He’s one of the most **boring/bored** people I’ve ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything **interesting/interested**.

E) Complete the sentences using one of the words in the box:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amusing/amused</th>
<th>confusing/confused</th>
<th>exhausting/exhausted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>annoying/annoyed</td>
<td>disgusting/disgusted</td>
<td>interesting/interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boring/bored</td>
<td>exciting/excited</td>
<td>surprising/surprised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. He works very hard. It’s not …… **surprising** …… that he’s always tired.
2. I’ve got nothing to do. I’m …………………………………
3. The teacher’s explanation was ………………………. Most of the students didn’t understand it.
4. The kitchen hadn’t been cleaned for ages. It was really ……………………….
5. I seldom visit art galleries. I’m not particularly ……………………… in art.
6. There’s no need to get ……………………… just because I’m a few minutes late.
7. The lecture was ………………………. I fell asleep.
8. I asked Emily if she wanted to come out with us but she wasn’t ……………………….
9. I’ve been working very hard all day and now I’m ……………………….
10. I’m starting a new job next week. I’m quite ……………………… about it.
11. Tom is very good at telling funny stories. He can be very ………………………
12. Liz is a very ……………………… person. She knows a lot, she’s traveled a lot and she’s done lots of different things.
SUBJECT: Conditionals

A) Choose the correct item and underline it:

1. If I move / I’ll move to Boston, I live / I’ll live on Main Street.
2. If you call / you’ll call your mother, she’ll be very happy.
3. If the mechanic fixes our car on time, we drive / we’ll drive to Center ville.
4. If it rains / it’ll rain today, we won’t go to the park.
5. If I’m not in a hurry tonight, I write / I’ll write to her.
6. If she isn’t / won’t be sick, she’ll go to school.
7. If they’re / they’ll be tired tomorrow, they don’t go / won’t go to work.
8. If John doesn’t buy a new car, he buys / he’ll buy a motorcycle.

B) Find correct items and complete the following sentences:

1. If we ….. go …….. to London, ……. we’ll …….. visit our cousin.
2. If they ………….. their homework tonight, their teacher ………….. happy.
3. If the weather …………….. good, George …………….. swimming this weekend.
4. If he ………………. swimming this weekend, ……………………. a wonderful time.
5. If you don’t eat your dinner tonight, ……………………. hungry.
6. If …………………..tired, they’ll go to sleep early tonight.
7. If it …………………….. , she’ll wear her new raincoat.
8. If you ………………….. too many cookies after dinner tonight, …………………….. get a stomachache.
9. If I …………………….. too much coffee, …………………….. get a headache.

C) Discramble the sentences:

1. If / she / she’ll / misses / bus / the / the / walk
   …….. If she misses the bus, she’ll walk
2. If / he / he’ll / concert / goes / his / suit / the / to / wear
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………...
3. If / she / she’ll / cook / isn’t / dinner / tired
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………...
4. If / I’m / I’ll / busy / not / you / visit
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………...
5. If / you / you’ll / be / don’t / school / finish / sorry
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………...
6. If / he / he’ll / a / get / good / hard / job / works
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………...

D) Complete the sentences with any vocabulary you wish:

1. If the weather is bad tomorrow, …………………………………………………………...
2. If we hitchhike to work, …………………………………………………………………..
3. If I don’t sleep well tonight, ………………………………………………………………..
4. If you don’t fix the broken window, ………………………………………………………
5. If he doesn’t cut his hair, …………………………………………………………………
6. If ……………………………………………………………………they’ll go to a restaurant tonight.
7. If ……………………………………………………………………., his mother will be happy.
8. If …………………………………………………………………., his mother will be sad.
9. If …………………………………………………………………., her boss will fire him.
10. If …………………………………………………………………., their friends will be angry.
11. If I study hard, ……………………………………………………………………………
12. If it’s sunny at the weekend, ……………………………………………………
13. If I become rich, ……………………………………………………………………….
14. If I go to London, ……………………………………………………………………….

E) Match the two halves of the sentences:
Sam is thinking about his camping holiday with Andy.

1. If it’s sunny, a) we’ll make a fire.
2. If it rains, b) we’ll be able to see the stars.
3. If the sky is clear, c) we’ll go skating.
4. If the lake freezes, d) we’ll sit outside.
5. If the sea is clean, e) we’ll need an umbrella.
6. If we get cold, f) we’ll go swimming.

1. d     2. ......  3. ......  4. ......  5. ......  6. .......

F) Complete the sentences with these phrases:
* If I had a motorbike * If I lost all my money * your English would improve
* If Peter ate less * I’m sure she’d tell me * If I were a famous model
* my uncle would stop too * my English teacher would be surprised

1. If you practiced more, …… your English would improve. …………………
2. …………………………………………………., it would be easier to go and visit my friends.
3. …………………………………………………., I would feel miserable.
4. If I started writing poetry, ………………………………………………………
5. …………………………………………………., he wouldn’t be so fat.
6. If my little sister did something wrong, ……………………………………………
7. …………………………………………………., people would see my photo everywhere.

G) Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

Example: I’m not ill, but if I ….. were ….. ill, I wouldn’t go ….. to school. (be / go)

1. The weather report says there will be snow tomorrow. If it ……………………………., I ……………………………. at home. (snow / stay)
2. Do you need some money? Let me look in my pockets. If I …………………………… some, I …………………………… you some. (have / lend)
3. No, sorry. I haven’t got any money with me. But you know I …………………………… it to you if I …………………………… any. (give / have)
4. I’m sure of it. You …………………………… hard. (pass / study)
5. Would you like to go to the cinema? If you …………………………… to go, I …………………………… with you. (want / come)
H) What would you do in each situation? Write UNREAL PRESENT situations.

* call an ambulance  * complain to the manager  * run away
* try to catch it  * ring the police
* walk to the nearest garage to get some

1. You find a fly in your soup. If I found a fly in my soup, I would complain to the manager.
2. You see a burglar breaking into your house.
3. You see a mouse in your kitchen.
4. Your car runs out of petrol.
5. You see an accident.
6. You see a ghost in your room.

I) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense:

Sarah is a bored teenager. If she … joined … (join) a club, she …………………… (make) more friends. She ……………………… (enjoy) herself if she …………………….. (go) out more. Her schoolwork is suffering too. If she ………………………… (study) more, she …………………………… (have) better marks and she ……………………… (enter) university. Unfortunately, she is becoming overweight. She ………….. (feel) fitter if she …………………………… (start) swimming, and she …………………….. (get) thinner if she ………………… (stop) eating so much chocolate.

J) Read these situations. Say how you would feel:

Example: your boy / girlfriend leaves you

If my girlfriend left me I would feel miserable.

1. you have nothing to do
2. you are lost in a foreign country
3. your pet dies
4. you see an enormous spider in the bathroom
5. you split your jeans in the street
6. someone steals your coat
7. you fail an important test
8. you win some money in a competition
K) Use the correct tense:

1. The teacher will be very angry if you .......................... (not do) your homework.
2. If he ........................................... (tell) me, I could help him.
3. If you don’t water the flowers, they ................................. (die).
4. If you didn’t water the flowers, they ................................. (die).
5. I ................................................. (come) if I had time.
6. If you don’t hurry, you .......................... (miss) the bus.
7. If I .............................................. (be) you, I wouldn’t buy that car.
8. He will play tennis if the weather ................................. (be) good.
9. I would be very happy if she .......................... (be) my sister.
10. She could win the race if she .......................... (try).
11. If he .......................... (go) to bed early, he will get up early.
12. If he touches this wire, he .......................... (get) a shock.
13. You will get wet if it .......................... (rain).
15. I wouldn’t say it if I .......................... (be) you.
16. What will you do if you .......................... (get) a bad mark?
17. If she .......................... (wear) a necklace, her dress will look better.
18. If you go near the dog, it .......................... (bite) you.
19. Bodrum .......................... (be) ideal for a holiday if it weren’t so crowded.
20. He will be ill if he .......................... (eat) so much.
21. If she .......................... (read) the book carefully, she will understand it.
22. The children can stay up late if they .......................... (be) good.
23. If the dinner isn’t ready, I .......................... (go) out.
24. We would die if the plane .......................... (crash).

L) Finish these sentences:

1. If you drive very fast, ...........................................................................
2. Would you give me some money if ....................................................
3. If she were my sister, ...........................................................................
4. I would spend every winter in Miami if .............................................
5. If they have time tomorrow, ..............................................................
6. Don’t give him anything if ..............................................................
7. We would go to the cinema if ............................................................
8. If John worked harder, ......................................................................
9. They would find me if ......................................................................
10. If I had a lot of money, .....................................................................
11. You could live more comfortably if ...............................................]
12. If she were a good girl, .....................................................................
13. If she goes to his office, .....................................................................
14. She would enjoy the party if ............................................................
15. If I weren’t busy, .............................................................................
A) Use the correct tense:

1. He ……………………………. (not / live) in İstanbul if he …………………. (hate) it.
2. If you …………………………… (write) the letters, I ……………………… (post) them.
3. If you ……………………………. (not / leave) immediately, I ……………………… (call) the police.
4. If he ……………………………. (not / arrive) soon, we …………………. (have to) have dinner without him.
5. I …………………………………… (not / have to) borrow any money from you if I ……………………………… (get) my salary tomorrow.
6. If you …………………………… (invite) her to the dance, she …………………. (be) very pleased.
7. If you …………………………… (retire) soon, you ………………………….. (make yourself ill.
8. If you ……………………………. (write) him a letter, he ………………………. (know) our address.
9. If the policeman had seen the thief, he …………………………………………….. (arrest) him.
10. The buildings wouldn’t have burned to ashes if the firemen ……………………………… (come) in time.
11. People wouldn’t cross the Bosphorus, if they ……………………………………………… (not / build) those bridges.
12. If the family had saved enough money, they ……………………………….. (buy) a new flat.
13. If I had known that he was sleeping, I ……………………………………………. (not / disturb) him.
14. If I had lost all my money, I …………………………………………... (be) very unhappy.
15. If you had phoned me before you came, you ………………………………………. (find) me at home.

B) Complete the following sentences in column A using the correct choice from column B.

A | B
---|---
1. You’ll get tired | a) If you can’t have it.
2. If you go to a football match, | b) If students make a lot of noise.
3. You can’t hear the teacher | c) you must take your umbrella with you.
4. I’ll help you with your lesson, | d) If you stand up for a long time.
5. If the soup is too hot, | e) If you’re at home tonight.
6. If it rains, | f) If you want to study.
7. His family may go on holiday | g) you won’t find a seat.
8. A man can’t buy what he needs | h) If they save enough money.
9. If you’re on a crowded bus, | i) If he doesn’t have enough money.
10. We’ll come to visit you | j) I’ll buy a car.
11. If they haven’t seen Topkapý Palace, | k) we’d better go there this afternoon.
12. If I get a driving licence, | l) I’ll come with you.
C) Complete the following sentences:

1. If you write me from England, .................................................................
2. She can learn English if .................................................................
3. We can catch the bus if .................................................................
4. If it doesn’t rain this afternoon, .................................................................
5. His family will be hungry if .................................................................
6. Your room will become untidy if .................................................................
7. A baby cries if .................................................................
8. If my girlfriend comes early, .................................................................
9. If he doesn’t smoke, .................................................................
10. You can’t sleep well if .................................................................

D) Rewrite the sentences using UNLESS:

1. If you don’t go to Venice, you will never ride in a gondola.
   ........................................................................................................
2. If it doesn’t rain, we will go to the cinema.
   ........................................................................................................
3. If you don’t go to a Chinese restaurant, you’ll never taste a Peking Duck.
   ........................................................................................................
4. If you don’t go to Bursa, you’ll never climb Uludag.
   ........................................................................................................
5. If you don’t go to India, you’ll never see Taj Mahal.
   ........................................................................................................
6. If you don’t answer my question, I won’t go anywhere.
   ........................................................................................................
7. I won’t let you go if you don’t give me my money back.
   ........................................................................................................
8. I’ll call the police if you don’t go away.
   ........................................................................................................
9. If you don’t complain the manager, you’ll always get bad service.
   ........................................................................................................
10. If you don’t have enough money, you can’t buy this car.
   ........................................................................................................
11. If he doesn’t work hard, he can’t pass his class.
   ........................................................................................................
12. You won’t catch the bus if you don’t leave immediately.
   ........................................................................................................

E) Choose the best one:

1. I ................. very unhappy if my friends didn’t come to my party.
   a) would have been            b) will be                        c) would                       d) would be

2. If the old man ................. some money, he would hire a taxi.
   a) have b) had c) would have d) had had

3. If you had come in time, you ................. the lesson.
   a) wouldn’t miss b) would miss c) would have missed d) wouldn’t have missed
4. I could have heard the telephone if I ……………………….. so deeply.  
   a) didn’t sleep                                      b) hadn’t been sleeping  
   c) wouldn’t sleep                                 d) wouldn’t have slept

5. If he doesn’t pay the bill, he ……………………….. into trouble. 
   a) won’t get                                      b) will get                          c) would get                      d) would have got

6. If the weather …………………… good, we would go swimming.  
   a) was                                b) would be                           c) were                        d) is

7. Your brother wouldn’t have found such a nice job if he ………………… a university diploma.  
   a) didn’t have                               b) doesn’t have             c) hadn’t had               d) hadn’t

8. You would have some money in your pocket if you …………………… it so generously.  
   a) hadn’t spent                                b) didn’t spend              c) couldn’t spend        d) don’t spend

9. If you don’t succeed in the test, you …………………….. the job.  
   a) were not going to get   b) wouldn’t get                      c) won’t get                 d) didn’t get

10. We wouldn’t be here now if we ……………………. in that airplane crash.  
    a) were                                         b) had been                   c) are                           d) had to be

F) Complete the following sentences in column A using the correct choice from column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Everyone on board the plane would have died</td>
<td>a) If I had not been to a doctor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. If the officials hadn’t stopped the poor man,</td>
<td>b) if you had taken him to the fun-fair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. If the climbers had found an easy way,</td>
<td>c) if the plane had crashed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I would be in a hospital now</td>
<td>d) she could have bought some expensive clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. We would have got wet</td>
<td>e) so many people wouldn’t have been killed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. If he had had enough time last summer,</td>
<td>f) he could have built his small house in two days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I might have come to your help</td>
<td>g) if we hadn’t taken our umbrellas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. If the driver had not slept,</td>
<td>h) they could have reached the top easily.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. The young boy would have been very happy</td>
<td>i) he would have gone on a holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. If her father had been rich,</td>
<td>j) if I had had time last Sunday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUBJECT: Wishes or If Only

A) Write sentences with “I WISH……..” and “IF ONLY…….”:

1. Ayşê isn’t here.
   I wish ...........................................................................

2. She lives in İstanbul (and she hates it).
   She wishes .................................................................

3. He can’t give up smoking.
   He wishes .................................................................
   If only ...........................................................................

4. I’m not lying on a beautiful sunny beach (and that’s a pity).
   I wish ...........................................................................
   If only ...........................................................................

5. They don’t know anything about cars (and their car has just been broken down).
   They wish ....................................................................

6. He has pneumonia.
   He wishes .................................................................
   If only ...........................................................................

7. She has to work tomorrow (but she’d like to stay in bed).
   She wishes .................................................................

8. There is going to be an examination tomorrow.
   If only ...........................................................................

9. My brother doesn’t keep his room tidy.
   I wish ...........................................................................

10. Sue doesn’t help with the housework.
    Sue’s mother wishes ....................................................

11. Mary often plays the piano in the middle of the night.
    Her neighbours wish ...................................................

B) Write the correct forms of the verbs:

1. I wish I ........................................ (have) today off.
   I wish I ........................................ (have) yesterday off.

2. If only I ........................................ (know) the answer now.
   If only I ........................................ (know) the answer a few minutes ago.

3. He wishes he ......................... (visit) them, but he can’t.

4. She wishes she ......................... (clean) the refrigerator today.
   She wishes she ......................... (clean) it yesterday.

5. If only he ......................... (not / eat) so much garlic!
   If only he ......................... (not / eat) so much garlic last night!

6. She has to walk up the stairs. She wishes her apartment building ................. (have) an elevator.
C) Ann doesn’t like her new house. Write what she WISHES:

“The house is so old and dirty. She has to paint it. The house doesn’t have central heating. The kitchen is small. “

1. ………… *I wish the house wasn’t so old and dirty* ……………
2. ……………………………………………………………………………
3. ……………………………………………………………………………
4. ……………………………………………………………………………

D) Kate wants things to be different in the future. Write what she WISHES:

“I want my father to give me more pocket money. I want my brothers to stop fighting. I don’t want my mother to make me eat vegetables. I don’t want my sister to wear my clothes. “

1. ………… *I wish my father would give me more pocket money* ……………
2. ……………………………………………………………………………
3. ……………………………………………………………………………
4. ……………………………………………………………………………

E) Ted regrets what he DID or DIDN’T DO. Write what he WISHES:

“He left his job. He didn’t listen to his wife. He robbed a bank. He was sent to prison.”

1. ………… *I wish I hadn’t left my job* ………………………………………
2. ……………………………………………………………………………
3. ……………………………………………………………………………
4. ……………………………………………………………………………

F) Read what Hilda says and write what she WISHES:

“I didn’t go to university. I didn’t get any qualifications. I can’t find a better job. The telephone never stops ringing. My boss doesn’t like me. I’d like to be rich. I always feel tired. It was wrong of me to shout at Ann. “

1. ………… *I wish I had gone to university* …………………………………
2. ……………………………………………………………………………
3. ……………………………………………………………………………
4. ……………………………………………………………………………
5. ……………………………………………………………………………
6. ……………………………………………………………………………
7. ……………………………………………………………………………
8. ……………………………………………………………………………

G) Write what these people wish they HAD or HADN’T DONE as in the example:

1. John drove his car so fast that he had an accident.
   John: …… *I wish I hadn’t driven my car so fast. I wouldn’t have had an accident* ….
2. Julie was late and she missed the beginning of the film.
   Julie: ……………………………………………………………………………
3. Jack ate too much and he was sick.
   Jack: ……………………………………………………………………………
4. Claire was very nervous during her driving test and she didn’t pass.
   Claire: .................................................................

5. Susan didn’t take off her gold ring when she went swimming and she lost it in the sea.
   Susan: .................................................................

6. Terry and Jane didn’t save money so they didn’t go on holiday last summer.
   Terry and Jane: .................................................................

H) Fill in the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. I wish I …… had met …… (meet) that actor when he was in town.
2. He wishes he ……………………….. (buy) that book last week – now he hasn’t got enough money.
3. If only I ……………………….. (be) older, I could have a driving licence.
4. I wish I ……………………….. (can / remember) where that book is.
5. Tony wishes he ……………………….. (go) to Paris with his brother, but he has to work.
6. If only the dog ……………………….. (not / eat) the tickets – now we can’t go to the show.
7. If only I ……………………….. (not / make) that mistake yesterday.
8. I wish this box ……………………….. (not / be) so heavy – I can’t lift it.
9. We wish we ……………………….. (not / leave) the gate open. Now the dog has escaped.
10. Paula wishes she ……………………….. (have) more time for gardening, but she hasn’t.
11. Mrs. Brown wishes she ……………………….. (write) those letters yesterday.

I) Write what the people WISH:

1. John ate too many cakes.
   John: …… I wish I hadn’t eaten too many cakes. ……..

2. Mr. Charles is not good-looking.
   Mr. Charles: .................................................................

3. Elizabeth broke her leg.
   Elizabeth: .................................................................

4. Alice’s students don’t work hard in her lesson.
   Alice: .................................................................

5. It’s raining hard. Tom is wet and cold.
   Tom: .................................................................

6. Danny is smoking and Mary doesn’t like it.
   Mary: .................................................................

7. Tommy was rude to his boss yesterday.
   Tommy: .................................................................

8. Mike crashed his dad’s car last night.
   Mike: .................................................................

9. Barbara can’t type fast. She won’t get the job.
   Barbara: .................................................................

10. Jack’s mother shouts at him all the time.
    Jack: .................................................................

11. Smith talks too much and his wife doesn’t like it.
    Smith’s wife: .................................................................

12. Luis’s car is very old but he can’t buy a new one.
    Luis: .................................................................
13. Mrs. Taylor stayed in the sun too long.
   Mrs. Taylor: ........................................................................................................
14. Sally is sad because she is poor.
   Sally: ...............................................................................................................
15. Jackson drank too much last night.
   Jackson: .........................................................................................................

J) Using the bold type in the sentences, write WISHES as in the example:

1. **You left the radio on** and now the batteries don’t work.
   You say, “…… **I wish I hadn’t left the radio on** …...........................................
2. It’s very dark outside and **you can’t find your torch**.
   You say, “.................................................................”
3. **You didn’t do your homework** and your teacher is angry.
   You say, “........................................................................................................
4. You are looking at a beautiful flower. **You don’t know what it is called.**
   You say, “......................................................................................................
5. It’s raining outside and **you want it to stop**.
   You say, “........................................................................................................
6. **You stayed up late last night** and today you’re very tired.
   You say, “........................................................................................................
7. You are having a party **but nobody has come yet.**
   You say, “........................................................................................................
8. You have short, straight hair. **You would like long, curly hair.**
   You say, “........................................................................................................
9. You have just left your house and **left the keys inside.**
   You say, “........................................................................................................
10. It is Christmas Day and **it doesn’t look like it is going to snow.**
    You say, “.....................................................................................................
11. You live in the city. **You prefer the countryside.**
    You say, “......................................................................................................
A) Fill in the blanks with the adjectives in brackets:

1. Tom is ......................................................... his brother. (old)
2. This problem is ............................................. that problem. (easy)
3. John is ......................................................... boy in our class. (tall)
4. My friend is ................................................. my sister. (fat)
5. My room is ................................................. room in our house. (small)
6. Konya is ..................................................... city in Turkey. (large)
7. The Kızılırmak is ......................................... river in Turkey. (long)
8. Madonna is ................................................ Sandra. (popular)
9. My English is ........................................... your English. (good)
10. The weather today is ...................................... the weather yesterday. (bad)
11. This garden is ............................................ that garden. (large)
12. Elizabeth is ............................................... girl in our group. (beautiful)
13. I am ......................................................... girl in the class. (short)
14. What is ..................................................... film on TV today? (funny)
15. Who is ..................................................... girl in your class? (pretty)

B) Fill in the blanks as in the example:

I went on holiday last year but it was a disaster! My hotel room was .. smaller than … (small) the one in the photograph in the brochure. I think it was ........................................... (small) room in the hotel. The weather was terrible too. It was ........................................... (cold) in England. The beach near the hotel was very dirty – it was ........................................... (dirty) all the beaches on the island. The food was ........................................... (expensive) I expected and I didn’t have enough money. One day I went shopping in a big department store and I broke a vase. It was ........................................... (expensive) vase in the whole shop. But ........................................... (bad) thing all was that I lost my passport and I couldn’t go back home. It was ........................................... (horrible) holiday all my life.

C) Complete the sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>DAVID</th>
<th>TOM</th>
<th>GEORGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>70 kgs</td>
<td>72 kgs</td>
<td>75 kgs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>1.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salary</td>
<td>$800/month</td>
<td>$1000/month</td>
<td>$1500/month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>House</td>
<td>3 rooms</td>
<td>4 rooms</td>
<td>5 rooms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. (young) David is ..... younger than ..... Tom and George.
2. (old) George and Tom are ........................................... David.
3. (heavy) George is the ........................................... all.
4. (light) Tom is ........................................... George.
5. (tall) Tom is ........................................... David.
6. (tall) George is ........................................... all.
7. (old) George is ........................................... Tom.
8. (little) David gets ……………………… money ……………………. Tom.
9. (much) George gets ……………………… money ……………………. Tom.
10. (small) David’s house is …………………………………………… Tom’s.
11. (big) George’s house is ………………………………………… all.
12. (big) Tom’s house is ………………………………………….. David’s.

Read the passage:

Mr. and Mrs. Smith are now flying to Canada. Miss Bennet is their stewardess. She is very talkative and friendly. She is showing Mr. and Mrs. Smith some pictures of her family and her best friend.

Miss Bennet: This is my best friend. Her name is Tina.
Mrs. Smith : She is very pretty. Is she older or younger than you?
Miss Bennet: She is one year younger.
Mrs. Smith : Aren’t you thinner than she is?
Miss Bennet: Yes, I am. Tina loves to eat very much.
Mrs. Smith : So do I. I hope it will be time for lunch soon.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Height</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Miss Bennet</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>1.73</td>
<td>57 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James Bennet</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>1.82</td>
<td>76 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tina Robbins</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>61 kg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D) Look at chart. Compare Miss Bennet with her brother and her best friend Tina Robbins:

Example: (Miss Bennet / tall / Tina Robbins)

Miss Bennet is taller than Tina Robbins.

1. (Miss Bennet / short / her brother James)
2. (James / tall / her sister)
3. (Miss Bennet / old / her best friend)
4. (Her best friend / young / Miss Bennet)
5. (Miss Bennet / short / her brother)
6. (Her brother / tall / Miss Bennet)
7. (Miss Bennet / fat / Tina)
8. (Tina / slim / Miss Bennet)
9. (Miss Bennet / slim / her brother)
10. (Her brother / fat / Miss Bennet)
E) Use “as ……………………. as” in the blanks:

1. Jack’s English is worse than Sonia’s.
   Jack’s English isn’t ………………………………………. Sonia’s.
2. Alper’s bag is 3 kg. Ahmet’s bag is 5 kg.
   Alper’s bag isn’t ………………………………………. Ahmet’s bag.
3. An orange is sweeter than a lemon.
   A lemon isn’t ………………………………………. an orange.
4. Terry is 1.70 cm tall. Jason is 1.70 cm tall too.
   Terry is ………………………………………. Jason.
5. Chinese is more difficult than French.
   French isn’t ………………………………………. Chinese.
6. Science fiction films and soap operas are very exciting.
   Science fictions are ………………………………………. soap operas.
7. Chemistry is more difficult than drawing.
   Chemistry isn’t ………………………………………. drawing.
8. Jane’s car is Mercedes, but Sue’s car is Opel.
   Sue’s car isn’t ………………………………………. Jane’s car.
9. July is hotter than May.
   May isn’t ………………………………………. July.
SUBJECT : Prepositions (at / in / on)

A) Fill in prepositions of time “AT / IN / ON” as in the example:

1. .. on .. Saturday 8. ........... 9 o’clock 15. ........... autumn
2. ........ July 9. ........... Christmas 16. ........... half past two
3. ........ 1984 10. ........... September 28th 17. ........... Monday morning
4. ........ March 25th 11........... 1991 18. ........... Easter
5. ........ Friday 12. ........ August 29th 19. ........... 10 o’clock
6. ........ summer 13. ........... winter 20. ........... Thursday afternoon
7. ........ the morning 14. ........... the evening 21. ........... noon

B) Fill in “AT / IN / ON” as in the example:

1. … in … December 6. ........... February 8th 11. ........... a quarter past six
2. ........ midnight 7. ........... noon 12. ........... Saturday night
3. ........ 1982 8. ........... 1964 13. ........... Friday evening
4. ........ April 9. ........... spring 14. ........... Monday
5. ........ April 2nd 10. ........... night 15. ........... June 26th

C) Fill in the blanks with “AT / IN / ON” as in the example:

1. We always go on holiday … in … summer.
2. My mother usually goes shopping …………….. Friday morning.
3. I always do my homework …………….. the evening.
4. The circus usually comes to our town …………….. spring.
5. Sophia’s birthday is …………….. May 16th.
6. I usually get up …………….. seven o’clock.
7. My favorite television programme begins …………….. 6:30 …………….. the evening.
8. Sometimes it snows …………….. winter.
9. My friend’s birthday is …………….. June.
10. Some birds and animals come out …………….. night.

D) Choose the correct answer:

1. My lesson starts ____ at _____ five o’clock.
   a) on b) at c) in
2. My father usually buys a newspaper _________ the morning.
   a) on b) at c) in
3. We wear warm clothes _________ winter.
   a) on b) at c) in
4. We get presents _________ Christmas.
   a) on b) at c) in
5. I usually visit my grandparents _________ Sunday afternoon.
   a) on b) at c) in
6. John’s birthday is _________ August 16th.
   a) on b) at c) in
   a) on              b) at             c) in
8. The supermarket is closed ___________ Sunday.
   a) on              b) at             c) in

E) Fill in “AT“, “IN” or “ON”:

   My birthday is …. on …. the 30th of July. Last year I had a great day. I got up ............
   8 o’clock .......... the morning and tidied the house. Then ............ the afternoon I went into
   town with my friend to buy food for the party. The party started ............ 7 o’clock ..........
   the evening and didn’t stop until very late ............ night! ............ the 31st of July I was
   very tired, so I went to bed early ............ the evening.

F) Fill in the spaces in the invitation with “IN”, “ON” or “AT”:

   I’m going to have a party! I hope you can come!!
   It’s going to start ........ 5 o’clock ........ the afternoon
   ........... the second Saturday ........ August. We’re
   going to have it in Tom’s house on Wilton Avenue.
   There’s a big garden and we’re going to have the party in
   the garden.
   Did you know that my birthday is ........ the eighth? But
   as you can see, the party is going to be ........ the tenth.
   Why? Parties are better ........ the weekend!

   BIRTHDAY PRESENTS WELCOME ANYDAY!!!!
SUBJECT: Prepositions

A) Put in the correct prepositions AT / ON / IN:

1. Colombos discovered America ………….. 1492.
2. You can see the stars ………….. night, if the sky is clear.
3. Tom isn’t here ………….. the moment. He’ll be back ………….. five minutes.
4. The course begins ………….. 7 January and ends ………….. 10 March.
5. Tom’s grandmother died ………….. 1977 ………….. the age of 79.
6. The price of electricity is going up ………….. October.
7. Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax ………….. weekends.
8. I can’t be at home ………….. the morning. Can you phone me ………….. the afternoon instead?
9. Jack’s brother is an engineer but he’s out of work ………….. the moment.
10. ………….. Sunday afternoons I usually go for a walk in the country.
11. Tom doesn’t see his parents very often these days- usually only ………….. Christmas and sometimes ………….. the summer for a few days.
12. The telephone and the doorbell rang ………….. the same time.
13. I walk up a lot of stairs everyday. My flat is ………….. the third floor and there is no lift.
14. We went to the theatre last night. We had seats ………….. the front row.
15. It can be dangerous when children play football ………….. the street.
16. I can’t find Tom ………….. in this photogfaph.
17. Do you take sugar ………….. your coffee?
18. You can find the sports results ………….. back page of the newspaper.
19. Sue and Dave got married ………….. Manchester four years ago.
20. Paris is ………….. the river Seine.
21. Mr. Boyle’s office is ………….. the first floor. When you come out of the lift, it’s the third floor ………….. your left.
22. Turn left ………….. the traffic lights.
23. In most countries people drive ………….. the right.
24. Last year we had a lovely skiing holiday ………….. the Swiss Alps.
25. She spends all day sitting ………….. the window and watching what is happening outside.

B) Fill in the blanks using correct prepositions:

1. Cenk lives ………….. 810 İstiklal Street.
2. The course begins ………….. 8 June and ends ………….. October.
3. Peter is ………….. class 2 B.
4. Peter goes to school ………….. Monday ………….. Friday.
5. Students haven’t got any lessons ………….. the weekends.
6. Sheila gets up ………….. 6.30 every morning.
7. Mike and his family go for a walk ………….. the evenings.
8. Michael has got a lot of posters and pictures ………….. cars ………….. the wall ………….. his room.
9. I go to school ………….. bus, not ………….. foot.
10. I went to bed ………….. midnight and got up ………….. 10.00 ………….. the morning.
11. Mozart was born ………….. Salzburg ………….. 1756.
12. There is a car in ………….. our house.
13. Who is sitting ………….. to you?
14. There is a light ............... the table.
15. Hurry up! We are going to the cinema .......... five minutes.
16. I haven’t seen Ann for a few days. I last saw her ........... Tuesday.
17. Jack’s brother is an engineer but he’s out of work .......... the moment.

C) Fill in the blanks using correct prepositions:

1. I looked at the bookcase and saw an interesting story book .......... the top shelf.
2. ............... sunny days we usually go on a picnic.
3. I usually listen .......... pop music, because I’m interested .......... it.
5. We had to work everyday .......... last summer.
6. .......... Christmas I’d like to visit my relatives.
7. I last saw him .......... last March.
8. Section 5 is .......... the first floor of the Prep School.
10. Ahmet’s grandmother died .......... 1990 .......... the age of 81.
11. Were there many people .......... the concert?
12. He speaks quite good French. He studied .......... Paris for a year.

D) Fill in the blanks using correct prepositions:

1. Mr. Mailer: Where’s Dr. Perez’s office?
   Miss King : You need to go .......... one floor. His office is on the third floor, not the fourth floor.
2. Jimmy was getting ready for school. He was looking for his clothes. His mother said,
   “Your shirt is .......... the chair. Your socks are .......... the drawer. Your shoes are .......... the bed.”
3. Get .......... the bus! It’s about to go.
4. The car .......... mine braked very hard and hit my car.
5. You walk very fast. You’re always five steps .......... me.
6. There are emergency telephones all .......... the E-5 Motorway.
7. I will be very angry with you if I see your bicycle leaning .......... the rose tree again.
8. There’s a big dog .......... you. Quick! Run away!
10. There is a concert. A lot of people are .......... the stadium.
11. Mary is sitting .......... John and Sebastian.
12. The dog is swimming .......... the river.
13. Ali is next to Barış or Ali is .......... Barış.
SUBJECT: Relative Clauses

A) Put in WHO / WHICH :

1. I met a woman ……who…… can speak six languages.
2. What’s the name of the man ………………… lives next door?
3. What’s the name of the river ………………… goes through the town?
4. Everybody ………………………_ went to the party enjoyed it very much.
5. Do you know anybody ………………… want to buy a car?
6. Where is the picture ………………… was on the wall?
7. She always asks me questions ………………… are difficult to answer.
8. I have a friend ………………….. is very good at repairing cars.
9. A coffee-maker is a machine ………………… makes coffee.
10. Why does he always wear clothes ………………… are too small for him?

B) Make one sentence from two. Use WHO / THAT / WHICH :

1. A girl is now in hospital. She was injured in the accident.
   A girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital………..
2. A man told me you were away. He answered the phone.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
3. A waitress was very impolite and impatient. She served us.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
4. A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
5. A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
6. I saw the man. He closed the door.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
7. The girl is happy. She won the race.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
8. The student is from China. He sits next to me.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
9. We are studying sentences. They contain adjective clauses.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
10. The taxi driver was friendly. He took me to the airport.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
11. The woman was polite. She answered the phone.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
12. The man has a good voice. He sang at the concert.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
13. We enjoyed the actors. They played the leading roles.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
14. The girl is hurt. She fell down the stairs.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
15. The student is in my class. He is walking with Ann.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
16. The police caught the thief. He stole the money.
   …………………………………………………………………………………….
17. Is the river very large? It flows through that town.

18. There is a new house in our neighborhood. It has a swimming pool.

19. The man is at the bus stop. He fixed our refrigerator.

20. Who are those students? They are talking to Mrs. Hinton.

21. This is the package. It came in the mail today.

22. I like the songs. They tell about life in the country.

C) Construct sentences with the cue words. Use WHICH or WHO.

1. vase / costs $500. Don’t touch it! …… That’s the vase which costs $500. ……
2. girl / is always late. Don’t wait for her! …… That’s the girl who is always late. ……
3. letter / came for my father. Don’t open it! ……………………………
4. man / gave me the wrong directions. Don’t listen to him! ……………………………
5. dress / got dirty. Don’t wear it! ………………………………………………………..
6. bus / goes to New York. Don’t get on it! ………………………………………………
7. woman / told everyone my secret. Don’t tell her! ……………………………………..
8. man / gave me the wrong directions. Don’t listen to him! …………………………….

D) Join the sentences using WHO, WHEN, WHERE, WHICH or WHOSE:

1. She’s the girl. She works in the library.
2. Corfu is an island. It has many beautiful beaches.
3. Here’s the alarm clock. I bought it yesterday.
4. I’ve spoken to John. His house was burgled last Monday.
5. That’s the lady. Her jewellery was stolen.
6. That is the radio. I won it in the competition.
7. John is the man. His house was destroyed by the fire.
8. There is the hospital. I was born there.
9. That was the summer. I met my wife then.
10. That is Fiona Webb. She is a famous dancer.
11. France is the country. The best wine is produced there.
12. 1945 was the year. The Second World War ended then.
13. That’s the hotel. I stayed there last summer.
14. August is the month. Most people go on holiday then.

E) Complete the conversation using WHO, WHICH, WHOSE or WHERE:

Simon: Hi Nigel! Where did you go on holiday?
Nigel: I went to Greece ...where... I had a nice time.
Simon: Did you see anything exciting?
Nigel: Yes. I went to the Acropolis, ...which... is very famous. I also went to the place ...where... the first Olympic Games were held.
Simon: Did you meet anyone interesting there?
Nigel: Yes. I met a girl ...who... was from England. She knew a Greek family... who... lived in Athens and she took me to meet them. They were a very rich and kind family ...whose... friendliness made me feel very welcome.
Simon: It sounds like you enjoyed yourself!
Nigel: Yes, it's a place ...where... I would like to go back.

F) Match the phrases as in the example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A blender</th>
<th>a path at the side of the road</th>
<th>you relax in it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a party</td>
<td>something</td>
<td>you mix things with it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an armchair</td>
<td>a machine</td>
<td>people walk along it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a pavement</td>
<td>a piece of furniture</td>
<td>people enjoy going to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a fork</td>
<td>an occasion</td>
<td>you eat with it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A blender is a machine you mix things with.
2. ...
3. ...
4. ...
5. ...

G) Complete with WHO or WHICH:

“Bob Geldof is a singer and songwriter WHO was born in Ireland in 1954.“
1. He is the famous pop musician ...who... organized charity pop concerts in the 1980s.
2. “I don’t like Mondays.” is the name of one of his songs ...which... became a big hit.
3. “Feed the World” is the song ...which... raised $8 million for famine relief in Ethiopia.
4. “Bond Aid” was the name of the group ...which... sang the number one hit.
5. Geldof traveled all over the world. He found a lot of famous people ...who... were willing to give money for his projects.
6. Before Bob became a pop star, he had many different jobs ...which... he didn’t like.
7. Being a music journalist in Canada was a job ...which... he enjoyed.
8. “The Boomtown Rats” is the name of the group ...which... he formed in Dublin.
9. Geldof wrote a best-selling book about his life ...which... is called IS THAT IT?
10. People ...who... know Geldof say that he is a very kind person.
H) Fill in the correct RELATIVE PRONOUN:

1. Did you see the man …… **WHO** …… stole her bag?
2. The eggs ………………… you’ve bought are bad.
3. Please give me the keys ………………… are on the table.
4. Is that man …………………. we saw in the park yesterday?
5. What’s the name of the lady ………………… babysits for you?
6. Tom is playing with the dog ………………… lives next door.
7. Have you eaten all the cakes ………………… I made yesterday?
8. How old is the man ………………… owns this shop?
9. Let’s all look at the picture ………………… is on page 7.
10. Has Peter returned the money ………………… he borrowed from you?
11. What colour is the dress ………………… you’re going to wear tonight?
12. The police have arrested the man ………………… murdered his wife.
13. The parcel ………………… is on the table is your birthday present.
14. Have you met the man ………………… Jackie is going to marry?
15. We will ask the man ………………… delivers our milk to leave an extra bottle.
16. Is she the person ………………… gave you this record?
17. We spent our holiday in a small town ………………… is near the sea.
18. The man ………………… married Kate is a millionaire.
19. Where are the shoes ………………… I bought this morning?
20. I still write to that lady ………………… I met twenty years ago.

I) Combine the sentences using RELATIVE PRONOUNS:

1. Bob bought the car from a man. The man was the owner of the gallery. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
2. The teacher asked me a question. It was taken from a story book. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
3. Have you employed the man? I recommend him to you last week. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
4. The book was very interesting. I borrowed it from the library yesterday. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
5. The girls are my classmates. We saw them at the cinema. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
6. Alex took the gun out of his pocket. He saw the robbers running down the street. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
7. The students missed the quiz. They came to class late. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
8. The flowers are still fresh. I picked them up this morning. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
9. There was a garden here. It was full of green trees. Now there are only two trees. (Relative Clause / Used to) ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
10. They played basketball at home. They broke the vase. It was very valuable. (While / Relative Clause) ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
11. Gerry works for a company. It makes typewriter. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
12. This is Mrs. Green. Her daughter got married to a drummer. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
13. That man is an artist. I forgot his name. ……………………………………………………………………………………………………………………………
A) Join these sentences using suitable RELATIVE PRONOUNS:

1. We have a neighbour. His dog barks a lot.
   .................................

2. I don’t know most of the people. You invited them for the party.
   ..........................................................

3. My cousin is a journalist. Her job is interesting.
   ..........................................................

4. That’s the parcel. It came in the mail.
   ..........................................................

5. Do you know the man? I asked him the address.
   ..........................................................

6. The boy is the travel agent. He is checking the tickets.
   ..........................................................

7. The gardener’s wife has just had her third baby. She has been married for six years.
   ..........................................................

8. The horse came in last. You were telling me about it.
   ..........................................................

9. I can’t remember the town. I was born there.
   ..........................................................

10. I apologized to the woman. I spilt her coffee.
    ..........................................................

11. Did you mail the letters? They were on my table.
    ..........................................................

12. The man teaches at the university. You met his daughter last night.
    ..........................................................

13. We’re studying science. It helps us to find out a lot about the world around us.
    ..........................................................

14. The man was very rich. He left a big tip for the waiter.
    ..........................................................

15. The subject interested everyone. You wrote about it last week.
    ..........................................................

16. Mrs. Fox belongs to an organization. It assista hospitals.
    ..........................................................

17. You should go to Dr. Anderson. He’ll give you a common exam.
    ..........................................................

18. We met a girl. Her name was unusual.
    ..........................................................

19. The story can’t possibly be true. He told it to us.
    ..........................................................

20. Did you buy the dress? It was very smart and expensive.
    ..........................................................

21. That’s the dog. It can understand everything.
    ..........................................................

22. My friend invited a lot of visitors. His house is very large.
    ..........................................................

23. The bus was very crowded. I took it this morning.
    ..........................................................
24. My girlfriend is very beautiful. Her eyes are green.

25. Bring me the books. I forgot them on my table.

B) Complete the sentences:

1. I watched a football match which ............................................
2. My friends whom ............................................................... brought me nice presents.
3. Did you pass the exam which ...................................................?
4. Students who ................................................................. must study harder.
5. The postman whose .......................................................... is at the door.
6. That’s the girl whose ...........................................................
7. Jim helped the old lady who ....................................................
8. The police asked some questions to the boy who ..............................
9. I have a new camera which ....................................................
10. A parrot is a bird that ..........................................................
11. The children whom ......................................................... were arguing with each other.
12. Prof. Moore who ............................................................... will be our guest.
13. The soup which ............................................................... was very salty.
14. A kangaroo is an animal which ............................................
15. Is that the same boy who .....................................................?
16. The present which ............................................................ was very interesting.
17. I need someone who .........................................................
18. The actor whom ............................................................. was very famous.

C) Answer the questions using RELATIVE PRONOUNS:

1. Who did she give the money to? (man / wait at the door)
   ..................................................................................
2. Where did he take her? (restaurant / serve Chinese food)
   ..................................................................................
3. What kind of students are mostly successful?
   ..................................................................................
4. What kind of people do you like?
   ..................................................................................
5. What kind of people don’t you like?
   ..................................................................................
6. Where did she live when she was a child? (big house / room for everyone)
   ..................................................................................
7. Who is a postman?
   ..................................................................................
8. What is a knife?
   ..................................................................................
9. What kind of place do you like?
   ..................................................................................
10. What is a zoo?
   ..................................................................................
D) Complete the sentences with WHO / WHICH / WHERE / WHOSE:

My friend ……………….. took me to a restaurant works in a big shop ……………… sells expensive shoes. The restaurant …………………. we had lunch was very modern. The food ………………….. they served was excellent. The waiters …………………. shirts were silk were always busy with the customers …………………. wallets were full of money.

The table …………………. we had was near a window, so we could see the cars ………………… were parked by the rich customers outside the restaurant. They were being watched by a young man in uniform.

After we had finished the meals, the waiter ………………….my friend called came with a small silver box …………………. he had already put the bill in. When my friend took the bill out of the box, he opened his eyes in surprise because he had never had to pay so much money before.

E) Rewrite the following story combining the sentences using a RELATIVE PRONOUN:

In 1956, a young sailor wrote a note. He felt very lonely. He put the note into a bottle. He threw the bottle into the ocean. In his note, he wanted any girl to write to him. A girl would find the bottle.

Two years later, a fisherman saw the sailor’s bottle and picked it up. He was fishing on a shore in Sicily. As a joke, he gave it to his daughter. She wrote the sailor a letter. After more letters, the sailor married her in 1958. He visited Sicily.

F) Combine the following sentences using WHERE or WHEN:

1. Here is the shop. I bought my new camera form this shop.
   …………………………………………………………………………………………….
2. We will spend our holiday in the same village. We have had a lot of joyful days there so far.
   …………………………………………………………………………………………….
3. We enjoyed Marmaris. We spent our summer holiday there this year.
   …………………………………………………………………………………………….
4. The library is quite far from the city center. I go and work there twice a month.
   …………………………………………………………………………………………….
5. I’ll never forget the day. I met my wife on this day.
   …………………………………………………………………………………………….
6. I’m looking forward to the Fifteenth of next month. I’ll get married then.
   …………………………………………………………………………………………….
7. Do you know the restaurant? We will meet you there tomorrow.
   …………………………………………………………………………………………….
8. John visited me last Friday. A few other friends also called me up last Friday.
   …………………………………………………………………………………………….
9. Last week I went to see the country town. I used to live in that town.
   …………………………………………………………………………………………….
10. Abant is a beautiful place. There are many lakes there.
    …………………………………………………………………………………………….
WORKSHEET 38

SUBJECT: Modals

A) Fill in the blanks with CAN or CAN'T:

1. She is a small baby. She .......... eat meat, but she ............ drink milk.
2. That dress is not expensive. I ............ buy it.
3. A cat ............. climb up a tree, but a dog ...........
4. I'm very tired today. I ............... clean my room.
5. John is very short. He ............ play basketball very well.
6. We are very hungry, so we ............ eat a lot of sandwiches.
7. He is very fat. He ............ run very fast.
8. We ............... sleep in the bedroom but we ........... sleep in the bathroom.

B) Fill in the blanks with CAN / CAN'T or MUST / MUSTN'T:

1. She is ill, so she ............. see the doctor.
2. It's raining heavily. You ............ take your umbrella.
3. We ......................... (not / pick) the flowers in the park.
4. Mike is nine months old. He .................... (not / eat) nuts.
5. I am very tall. So I .............. play basketball.
6. I'm sorry but we ....................... (not / come) to your party tomorrow.
7. You are speaking very quietly. I ................. (not / understand) you.
8. ....................... I use your phone?
9. We ................ go to the bank today. We haven't got any money.
10. My hands are dirty. I ............... wash them.
11. It's late. I ............... go now.
12. You ................ stop at a red traffic light.
14. Tourists ................... take their passports when they go abroad.
15. Footballers ...................... (not / touch) the ball with their hands.
16. ....................... you play the guitar?
17. I ......................... (not / come) with you now. Because I'm studying my lessons.

C) Use MUST / MUSTN'T / HAVE TO or (NOT) HAVE TO:

1. I can stay in bed tomorrow morning because I ......................... work.
2. Whatever you do, you ................. touch that switch. It’s very dangerous.
3. You ................ forget what I told you. It’s very important.
4. We ..................... leave yet. We’ve got plenty of time.
5. Ann was feeling ill last night. She ............. leave the party early.
6. I ................ go to the bank yesterday to get some money.
7. The windows are very dirty. I ............... clean them.
8. The windows aren’t dirty. You ................. clean them.
9. We arrived home very late last night. We ............... wait half an hour for a taxi.
10. These cakes are very nice. You .................. have one.
11. We ......................... take an umbrella. It’s not going to rain.
12. This is a secret. You ……………………………. tell anybody.
13. You …………………………… buy a newspaper. You can have mine.
14. This train doesn’t go to London. You ………………………… change at Bristol.
15. In many countries men ………………………… do military service.
16. Sarah is a nurse. Sometimes she ………………………… work at weekends.

D) Fill in the blanks using (NOT) HAVE TO / MUST (NOT) / CAN / COULD:

1. George has traveled a lot. He ……………………… speak four languages.
2. I can’t sing now but I ……………………… sing very well when I was a child.
3. She will stay in bed till 10 o’clock this morning. Because she ……………………… go to work.
4. Many students in Turkey ……………………… wear uniform when they go to school.
5. I’m sorry I couldn’t come yesterday. I ……………………… work late.
6. You’ve been coughing a lot recently. You ……………………… smoke so much.
7. You have a bad headache. So you ……………………… go to bed early.
8. I can’t swim very far these days but ten years ago I ……………………… swim from one side of the lake to the other.
9. You ……………………… see the sea from our bedroom window.
10. It isn’t permitted to speak Turkish during the lessons. So you ……………………… speak Turkish.

E) Fill in the blanks with MUST (NOT) / CAN (NOT) / (NOT) HAVE TO / NEEDN’T:

1. You ……………………… park in that street. It is not permitted.
2. Look at George. He is working very well. He ……………………… be ill.
3. There’s someone at the door. I’m expecting Paul. It ……………………… be Paul.
4. Ali’s car is here. He ……………………… be here.
5. The baby is asleep. You ……………………… shout.
7. A: “Do you want me to wait for you?”
   B: “No, it’s OK. You ……………………… wait.”
8. I can’t get any answer from my telephone. It ……………………… be out of order.
9. Ann stayed in bed this morning because she ……………………… go to work.
10. Tom has just given me a letter to post. I ……………………… forget to post it.

F) Use a suitable present or past MODAL AUXILIARY:

1. He ……………………… play chess when he was young.
2. You ……………………… drive a car when you are 18.
3. ……………………… I ask you a question?
4. She ……………………… be 25. She looks older than that.
5. His telephone doesn’t answer. He ……………………… (go) to the club.
6. She entered the room carrying a wet umbrella. She ………………………(walk) in the rain.
7. My car didn’t work this morning. So I ……………………… walk to the office.
8. He ……………………… (be) home, but we didn’t telephone him.
9. She ……………………… (help) me a lot by giving me a little of his time, but she preferred to go out.
10. He doesn’t know the answer. He ……………………… (study).
11. I can’t find the house. I ……………………… (write) down the address.
12. She is very sleepy. She ……………………… (stay) up very late last night.
13. I ……………………… go for a walk later. It depends on the weather.
14. The ground is covered with snow. It ........................................ (snow) last night.
15. She ........................................ (be) in a great hurry to leave for the theater because she left all the dinner dishes on the table.
16. That store has just gone bankrupt. I believe they ........................................ (have) a stricter policy about giving people credit.
17. I’m afraid Mr. Smith is deaf. He ........................................ (not / hear) what you say.

G) Fill in the blanks with suitable MODAL AUXILIARY VERBS:

1. At the end of the month the Post Office will send him an enormous bill which he ........................................ pay.
2. When I was a child, I ........................................ understand adults, and now that I am an adult I ........................................ understand children.
3. When I first went to England I ........................................ read English but I ........................................ understand it.
4. ........................................ I see your passport, please?
5. He sees very badly, he ........................................ wear glasses all the time.
6. Pedestrians ........................................ either use the crosswalk or cross the street at the traffic lights.
7. The buses were all full; I ........................................ take a taxi.
8. You ........................................ drive fast; there is a speed limit here.
9. ........................................ we all go to the football match tonight?
10. You ........................................ argue with your father, you ........................................ obey him.
11. I know she was in because I heard her radio, but she didn’t open the door. She ........................................ (hear) the bell.
    B: You ........................................ (buy) milk; we have heaps in the house.
13. I ........................................ carry this heavy pack myself. I think I will ask for help.
14. When I woke up this morning, the light was on. I ........................................ (forget) to turn it off.
15. I saw her at the office half an hour ago. She ........................................ (be) at home now. It is almost impossible.
16. I can’t find my keys. I ........................................ (put) them somewhere in my room.
17. I don’t know what all this noise about. It ........................................ (be) my father breaking wood in the backyard.
18. I can’t find my mother. She ........................................ (go) shopping.
19. The weather is overcast. It ........................................ (rain) in the afternoon.
20. If you have finished your work, you ........................................ (leave).
21. ........................................ you like to come to the cinema with us?
22. ........................................ I come in?
23. Emily ........................................ (wear) glasses since she was eight.
24. Deniz had no money, so she sold her car. A few days later she won a lot of money in a competition. She ........................................ (sell) her car.
25. The accident happened because he was driving on the wrong side of the road. He ........................................ (drive) on the right.

H) A mysterious letter has arrived for Tom by special delivery. He is nervous about opening it. Add suitable MODAL VERBS to complete the dialogue. He is with Jill, his wife.

Jill : ................................. I have a look at it? (permission)
Tom : I ................................. think who it’s from. (negative ability)
Jill : It ……………………… be important. (assumption)
Tom : ……………………… you read the postmark? (ability)
Jill : It ……………………… be from the taxman. (possibility)
Tom : No, it ……………………… be from him. He always uses a special envelope. (negative assumption)
Jill : It ……………………….. be from your bank manager (possibility), so you …………
open it immediately. (advice)
Tom : Yes, I ………………………… stop putting it off (obligation). Now, let’s see. Is it
good news or bad?

I) Draw conclusions using CAN’T / MUST / MIGHT:

1. He drives a very expensive car and owns a private plane. (rich)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
2. He spends all day walking round the town. (job)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
3. They are asking the way to the city center. (tourist)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
4. She works for a daily newspaper. She goes to the big football matches. (sports reporter)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
5. I thought he studied medicine, but she’s going to an outdoor job now. (doctor)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
6. She teaches maths at the university. (stupid)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
7. A: What happened to your leg?
   B: I slipped badly on the ice and broke it.
   A: Oh! That ………………………………. hurt a lot.
   B: It does.
8. A: Listen! Do you hear a noise like someone shouting?
   B: Yes, I do. The new neighbours upstairs ……………………………… quarrel again.
   B: What makes you think so?
   A: The boss seemed very pleased with my last project.
10. A: That man over there looks like our district manager.
    B: No, he ………………………………………. be him. He went to the USA three days
    ago and hasn’t returned yet.

J) Fill in MUST or MUSTN’T:

1. It’s cold. You ……………………… leave without your jacket.
2. You ……………………… eat fruit and vegetables to stay healthy.
3. I ……………………… go to the post office. I have a letter to send.
4. You ……………………… speak rudely to your parents.
5. You ……………………… park here – it’s illegal.
6. We ……………………… hurry or we’ll miss the bus.
SUBJECT: Modals

A) Use a suitable present or past MODAL AUXILIARY:

1. I can’t find my book. I .......................................................... (leave) it on the bus.
2. They don’t answer their phone; they ........................................... (go) away on their vacation.
3. John went to the movies last night, but he ............................................... (stay) at home and ................................................. (prepare) his lessons.
4. The lights have gone out. A fuse .......................................................... (blow).
5. She ................................................ (go) to school. It’s Saturday.
6. You were stupid to go skiing here. You ........................................... (break) your leg.
7. She ........................................ (sing) like an angel when she was a kid.
8. ........................................... I make a suggestion?
9. You ........................................ go and see “Batman”. It’s a great film.
10. He came home alone. You ................................................ (let) him do that; he .............................................. (get) lost.
11. He read the message but he .......................................................... (not) understand.
12. I ........................................... (lend) you the money. Why didn’t you ask me?
13. A: Can I have some sweets? I am hungry.
    B: You ........................................ hungry. You have just had dinner.
14. Tom ........................................... (write) this, because it is in French and he doesn’t know French.
15. He looked so tired. He ......................................................... (work) very hard.
16. He ........................................... be a very clever boy. He has entered the university very easily.

B) Fill in the blanks using MUST, CAN’T, MAY, MIGHT, COULD and PAST FORMS of them:

1. Sally looks sad and worried. She ........................................... (have) a problem with something.
2. Bob ......................................... (be) at school because I haven’t seen him today.
3. Mr. Treves hasn’t come to work yet. He has never been late for work. He ........................................... (miss) the bus.
4. Timmy is a very good boy. He isn’t naughty, so he ........................................... (break) that window. Someone else ........................................... (break) it.
5. I’m sure that I dropped my key in the car. It ........................................... (be) there at the moment.
6. The street is wet this morning. I’m not sure but it ........................................... (rain) last night.
7. A: I talked to your science teacher at school yesterday.
    B: You ................................. (talk) to her because she wasn’t at school yesterday.
8. A: The man was being taken to hospital. He ........................................... (have) an accident.
    B: Yes, I’m sure he had an accident.
9. A: Will you come to my birthday party tomorrow?
   B: I ……………………………. (come) to your party because I have to look after my little sister.

10. A: I’m going to do a parachute jump next week.
    B: You are going to jump out of an aeroplane! But you’re 73 years old! You ……………
    (be) serious. You ……………………….. (be) mad.
    A: It really ……………………….. (be) wonderful looking down on everything. I’ve always wanted to try it.
    B: But anything could happen. You …………………. (be) injured, or even killed. I wouldn’t take the risk.
    A: Well, your life ……………………….. (be) much fun if you never take risks. You ought to try it, too. You never know. You …………………….. (enjoy) it.
    B: Enjoy it! You ……………………….. (be) joking.

11. She knew everything about our plans. She ………………………………………… (listen) to our conversation.

12. He ……………………………………….. (eat) the roasted beef when we were out. He is a vegetarian.

13. Mrs. White bought a new fur coat! She …………………………………….. (win) a lottery.

14. John said he would ring, but he hasn’t. He ……………………………………….. (forget) all about it.

15. The children …………………………….. (study) in the library now because they have a test tomorrow.

16. The singer has got a sore throath, so she ……………………………………….. (sing) at the concert.

17. I …………………………….. (be) at home this evening, or I ……………………………. (be) out, I’m not sure.

18. He drank three glasses of water. He ………………………………………….. (be) very thirsty.

19. A: Where’s the cat?
    B: It …………………………………….. (go) out, the door is closed.

20. The police arrested him right away. They ……………………………………….. (find) enough evidence.

21. He had no money, so he …………………………………….. (lend) you some.

22. We can’t wait any longer. Something ………………………………………….. (do) immediately.

23. They all shouted in fear. They ………………………………………….. (be) very afraid.

24. A: Your dog bit me as I was standing in the hall.
    B: It ……………………………………….. (be) my dog. It was with me all day.

25. A: I phoned you at 9 o’clock this morning and got no answer.
    B: I ……………………………………….. (be) in the garden. I planted some flowers this morning.

26. My grandmother always has a rest at this time of the day, so she …………………………….. (take) a nap now.

27. Mrs. Green wasn’t good at ice-skating, but she insisted on and broke her leg. She ……………………………………….. (give) up doing that.

28. A: I’m afraid Ted is watching TV again.
    B: He …………………………………….. (watch) TV, because his room is completely silent and dark. He ……………………………….. (sleep).

29. That carpet was made by hand. It ………………………………………….. (take) a long time to make it.
C) Put an asterisk (*) for what you MUST, MUSTN’T or NEEDN’T do and then write them down as in the examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>MUST</th>
<th>MUSTN’T</th>
<th>NEEDN’T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tidy your room</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheat on the exams</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do your homework regularly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen to the teacher</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit the teacher</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run in the halls</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk during the test</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake up early at weekends</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get to class late</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash your hand before meal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear a tie at the parties</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. …I must tidy my room. ………………………………………………………………
2. …I mustn’t cheat on the exams. …………………………………………………
3. ………………………………………………………………………………………
4. ………………………………………………………………………………………
5. ………………………………………………………………………………………
6. ………………………………………………………………………………………
7. ………………………………………………………………………………………
8. ………………………………………………………………………………………
9. ………………………………………………………………………………………
10. ………………………………………………………………………………………

D) Complete the sentences with MUST / MUSTN’T or NEEDN’T:

**Examples:** I haven’t got much time. I …. **must** …. hurry.
I have got plenty of time. I …. **needn’t** …. hurry.

1. “Do you want me to wait for you?”
   “No, it’s okay. You …………………….. wait.”
2. Smith gave me a letter to post. I ……………………….. forget to post it.
3. You ………………….. come if you don’t want to but I hope you will.
4. We have enough food at home so we ……………………. go shopping today.
5. This book is very valuable. You ………………….. look after it very carefully and you …………………….. lose it.
6. You have got a new skirt, so you ……………………. buy another.
7. It’s holiday tomorrow. You ………………….. get up early.
8. He’s ill, so he …………………….. see the doctor.
9. It’s snowing. You ……………………. put on your coat.
10. You ……………………. take too many aspirins in one day.
WORKSHEET 40

SUBJECT: Used to / Would / Be used to

A) Complete the sentences using USED TO or BE USED TO:

1. I ……………………………… (live) in Finland, but now I live in France.
2. He ……………………………….. (sit) in the back of the classroom, but now he prefers to sit in the front row.
3. When I was a child, I ………………………………… (play) games with my friends in a big field near my house after school every day.
4. It’s hard for my children to stay inside on a cold, rainy day. They ………………………… (play) outside in the big field near our house. They play there almost every day.
5. People ………………………………………… (believe) that the world was flat.
6. Trains ………………………………….. (be) the main means of cross-continental travel. Today, most people take airplanes for long-distance travel.
7. Ms. Stanton’s job requires her to travel extensively throughout the world. She …………………………………………………………………… (travel) by plane.
8. You and I are from different cultures. You ……………………………. (have) fish for breakfast. I ……………………………………………. (have) cheese and bread for breakfast.
9. What ……………………………………. (do) on summer days when you were a child?
10. Bill lives alone. He doesn’t mind this. Because he ………………………………………………………. (live) alone.
11. Tom ……………………… (drink) a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.
12. I have to work hard. This is not a problem for me. I have always worked hard. So I ………………………………………… (work) hard.
13. Some friends of yours have just moved into a flat on a busy street. It is very noisy. They will ……………………………………………. noise.
14. When we were children, we ………………………………….. (swim) every day.
15. I haven’t been to the cinema for ages now. We ………………………………… (go) a lot.
16. Dennis gave up smoking two years ago. He ………………………………………… (smoke)

B) Rewrite the sentences using USED TO:

1. When she was a child, she lived in a small village. …………When she was a child, she used to live in a small village. ……………
2. When he was a young man, he enjoyed playing basketball. ……………………………………………………………………………………………
3. In ancient Rome, wall paintings were a popular form of advertising. ………………………………………………………………………………………
4. Before she learned to read, her parents read stories to her. ……………………………………………………………………………………….
5. Before he came to Ankara, life was cheap in Turkey. ………………………………………………………………………………………
6. Jim spoke German at school, but he has now forgotten. ………………………………………………………………………………………
7. Susan was a nurse before she got married and raised a family. ………………………………………………………………………………………
8. Sally played tennis when abroad, but she prefers swimming now. ………………………………………………………………………………………
9. Before they bought their house, they lived in an apartment. ………………………………………………………………………………………
10. While she was going to university, she worked in a doctor’s office.

11. Before he married his second wife, he was quite happy.

C) Complete the text about Ziggy Starr when she was a child using USED TO / DIDN’T USE TO and the verbs in brackets:

I didn’t use to have (not have) many friends when I was a child so I ……………………………… (play) with my toys all day. I …………………………… (worry) about things a lot but I ……………………………. (not bite) my nails or suck my thumb. I remember that I ……………………………. (cry) a lot and I ……………………………. (be) really afraid of the dark.

D) Complete the text using USED TO and the verbs in the box:

School has changed since I was a student. We used to wear school uniform and I didn’t like that very much. We …………………………………. a lot of lessons and most of them were difficult. We …………………………………. homework every day. We …………………………………. lots of books and we …………………………………. everything by heart. And our teachers …………………………………. us a lot of tests and examinations. Some of them were impossible! I think school is easier now than it was 50 years ago.

E) Use USED TO / WOULD (a repeated action in the past):

1. I … used to be …… (be) very shy. Whenever a stranger came to our house, I … would hide …………. (hide) in a closet.
2. I remember my Aunt Susan very well. Every time she came to our house, she …………………………………. (give) me a big kiss and pinch my cheek.
3. I …………………………………. (be) afraid of flying. My heart …………………………………. (start) pounding every time I stepped on a plane. But now I’m used to flying and enjoy it.
4. I got a new bicycle when I was ten. My friends …………………………………. (ask) to ride it, but for years I …………………………………. (let / never) anyone else use it.
5. When my grandfather was a boy and had a cold, his mother …………………………………. (make) him go to bed. Then she …………………………………. (put) goose fat on his chest.
6. When I was a child, I …………………………………. (take) a flashlight to bed with me so that I could read comic books without my parents’ knowing about it.
7. Last summer, my sister and I took a camping trip in the Rocky Mountains. It was a wonderful experience. Every morning, we …………………………………. (wake) up to the sound of singing birds. During the day, we …………………………………. (hike) through woods and along mountain streams.
8. I can remember Mrs. Sawyer’s fifth grade class well. When we arrived each morning, she …………………………………. (smile / always) and …………………………………. (say) hello to each student as he or she entered. When the bell rang, she …………………………………. (stand) up and …………………………………. (clear) her throat. That was our signal to be quiet. Class was about to begin.
WORKSHEET 41

SUBJECT: Some / Any / Much / Many / A lot of / (a) Few / (a) Little

A) Fill in SOME or ANY as in the example:

1. Are there ........ any ........... rabbits in the garden?
2. Are there ................ children in the class?
3. There aren’t ................. chairs in the room.
4. Are there ................. birds in the tree?
5. There isn’t ................. money in the bag.
6. There is ................. coffee in the cup.
7. There are .................. policemen in the police station.
8. Are there ................. fish in the water.
9. Are there ................. oranges in the basket?
10. There isn’t ................. milk in the fridge.
11. I have ............. tea, but I don’t have ................. sugar.
12. Is there ................. meat at home?
13. There were ................. apples here a minute ago.
14. There aren’t ................. glasses on the table.
15. Please buy me ................. stamps at the post office.

B) Write what they have got and what they haven’t got:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>tomatoes</th>
<th>potatoes</th>
<th>meat</th>
<th>bread</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Teresa</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richard + Jenny</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sally</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Teresa has got some tomatoes, some meat and some bread but she hasn’t got any potatoes.
2. Richard and Jenny .................................................................
   ..............................................................................
3. Mark ..............................................................................
   ..............................................................................
4. Sally ..............................................................................
   ..............................................................................

C) Fill in HOW MUCH, HOW MANY, A FEW, A LITTLE, SOME or ANY:

1. A: ......................... bananas would you like, sir?
   B: Just ......................... , please.
2. A: Can I have ......................... milk?
   B: Sorry, we haven’t got ......................... milk.
3. A: ......................... bread would you like?
   B: Just ......................... , please.
4. A: ......................... carrots do we have?
   B: We have only .........................
5. A: ......................... oranges do we need?
   B: We don’t need ......................... oranges.
6. A: ......................... sugar would you like in your coffee?
   B: Just ........................., please.
7. A: Could I have .................... tea, please?
   B: Of course. Would you like .................... biscuits, too?
8. A: Is there .................... wine in the fridge?
   B: No, we need to buy ....................
9. A: .................... flour does she need?
   B: Just ....................
10. A: Have you got .................... potatoes?
   B: Yes. .................... would you like?

D) Fill in SOME, ANY, MUCH or MANY:

1. A: I’d like .................... eggs, please.
   B: Of course. How .................... would you like?
   A: Six, please. Are there .................... tomatoes?
   B: Certainly. How .................... do you need?
   A: A kilo, please.
   B: How .................... do you need?
   A: Half a bottle. Is there .................... flour?
   B: Certainly. How .................... do you need?
   A: A kilo, please.

E) Fill in HOW MUCH or HOW MANY:

1. .................... potatoes do we need?
2. .................... sugar would you like?
3. .................... milk is there in the fridge?
4. .................... eggs do you want?
5. .................... ham do you need?

F) Write ( C ) for the correct sentences, as in the example:

1. a. There aren’t some tomatoes in the fridge. ............ 
   b. There aren’t any tomatoes in the fridge. ..........., C ...
2. a. I’d like some soup, please. .................... 
   b. I like some soup, please. .................... 
3. a. Would you like some orange juice? ............ 
   b. Do you like some orange juice? ............ 
4. a. How much cherries do you need? ............ 
   b. How many cherries do you need? ............ 
5. a. I’d like some rice for lunch. .................... 
   b. I’d like a rice for lunch. .................... 
6. a. Would you like some bread? ............ 
   b. Do you like some bread? ............ 
7. a. No thanks. I don’t want any coffee. ............ 
   b. No thanks. I’d like any coffee. ............ 
8. a. “Here’s your hamburger.”
   “How many is it?” ............ 
   b. “Here’s your hamburger.”
   “How much is it?” ............ 
9. a. How much you want? ............ 
   b. How much do you want? ............ 
10. a. I’m hungry. Is there anything to eat? ............ 
    b. I’m hungry. Is this anything to eat?
A) Complete the sentences using SOMEONE / ANYONE / NO ONE / SOMETHING / ANYTHING / NOTHING / SOMEWHERE / ANYWHERE / NOWHERE / EVERYONE / EVERYTHING / EVERYWHERE:

1. Do you have ______________________ in your pocket?
2. Bob doesn’t have ______________________ in his pocket.
3. My roommate is speaking to ______________________ on the phone.
4. Ann didn’t tell ______________________ her secret.
5. I talked to ______________________ at the phone company about my bill.
6. Jane gave me ______________________ for my birthday.
7. Paul didn’t give me ______________________ for my birthday.
8. Did Paul give you ______________________ for your birthday?
9. My brother is sitting at his desk, and he is writing a letter to ______________________.
10. A: The room is empty.
    B: You’re right. There is ______________________ to talk to here.
11. A: What did you do last night?
    B: I didn’t do ______________________.
12. They won’t go ______________________ after dark.
13. A: Does ______________________ have a red pen?
    B: Yes. Betty does.
14. If ______________________ wants to leave early, he or she can.
15. There is ______________________ at the door. Can you go and see who it is?

B) Complete the sentences using SOMEONE / ANYONE / NO ONE / SOMETHING / ANYTHING / NOTHING / SOMEWHERE / ANYWHERE / NOWHERE / EVERYONE / EVERYTHING / EVERYWHERE:

1. The bus was completely empty. There was ______________________ on it.
2. The party was very nice. ______________________ enjoyed it.
3. Tom is very popular. ______________________ likes him.
4. ______________________ was very kind to us. They helped us too much.
5. ______________________ can make her happy because she is very sad now.
6. I opened the door but there was ______________________ there.
7. ______________________ telephoned the police but he didn’t give his name.
8. Is ______________________ living in that house? It looks empty.
9. I heard ______________________ falling down the stairs.
10. ______________________ is here, no absentees.
11. Jane was very hungry, so she wanted to go ______________________ to eat a hamburger.
12. John went ______________________ exciting last week.
13. She stayed in Istanbul for a month and visited ______________________ in this city.
14. What’s wrong? Have you got ______________________ in your eye?
15. Does ______________________ mind if I smoke?
16. A: Where did you go for your holidays?
    B: ______________________. I stayed at home.
17. The accident looked serious but fortunately ______________________ was injured.
18. A: What did you have for breakfast?
    B: ______________________. I don’t usually have ______________________ for breakfast.
C) Rewrite the following sentences without changing the meaning:

Example: There wasn’t anyone in front of me in the cinema.
There was no one in front of me in the cinema.

1. They don’t know anyone in this town. They know ………………………………………………………………
2. She met no one at the bus-stop. She didn’t ……………………………………………………………………..
3. You told nobody to go with you. You ………………………………………………………………………………
4. We ate nothing until dinner. We didn’t ……………………………………………………………………………
5. She told no one nothing about last night. She didn’t ………………………………………………………………
6. She didn’t tell anybody about her plans. She told …………………………………………………………………
7. I didn’t say anything. I said ……………………………………………………………………………………………
8. The station isn’t anywhere near here. The station is …………………………………………………………………
9. I don’t want anything to drink. I want …………………………………………………………………………………
10. We did nothing during our vacation. We ……………………………………………………………………………

D) Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>anybody</th>
<th>nobody</th>
<th>everybody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>something</td>
<td>anything</td>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>anywhere</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a) Woman : Hello. Can I speak to …somebody ….. in the Accounts Office, please?
Man : I’m sorry, madam. It’s after 6:00. There isn’t ………………….. in the Accounts Office now. ………………….. has gone home.
Woman : But I must speak to …………………….. today.
Man : I’m sorry. There’s …………………….. here. Can you phone back in the morning? There will be …………………….. here then.

| somewhere | anywhere | nowhere | everywhere |

b) Mother : Would you like …………………….. to eat?
Daughter : No, thanks. I don’t want …………………….. at the moment, thank you.
Mother : But you’ve had …………………….. to eat all day. Is …………………….. all right?
Are you feeling ill?
Daughter : No. Don’t worry. …………………….. is fine. I’m just not hungry. That’s all.

| somewhere | anywhere | nowhere | everywhere |

c) Man : I’ve got …………………….. to stay. I need …………………….. for two nights.
I’ve tried all the hotels near here, but …………………….. is full. I can’t find a room ……………………………
E) Rewrite the sentences. Use the words in brackets:

1. There isn’t anything in the fridge. (nothing)
   ……… There’s nothing in the fridge. ………

2. I’ve got nothing to say. (anything)
   ………………………………………………………

3. There’s nobody at home. (anybody)
   ………………………………………………………

4. They haven’t got anywhere to live. (nowhere)
   ………………………………………………………

5. There isn’t anyone outside. (no one)
   ………………………………………………………

6. We’ve got nowhere to sit down. (anywhere)
   ………………………………………………………
SUBJECT : Tag questions

A) Put A QUESTION TAG at the end of each sentence:

1. Tom won’t be late, …………… will he …………… ?
2. They were very angry, ……………………………………….
3. Ann’s on holiday, ……………………………………….
4. You weren’t listening, ……………………………………
5. Sue doesn’t like onions, ……………………………………
6. Jack’s applied for the job, …………………………………
7. You’ve got a camera, ………………………………………
8. You can type, …………………………………………………
9. He won’t mind if I go early, ……………………………
10. Tom could help you, ………………………………………
11. There are a lot of people here, ……………………………
12. Let’s have dinner, …………………………………………..
13. This isn’t very interesting, ………………………………
14. I’m too fat, …………………………………………………
15. You wouldn’t tell anyone, ………………………………
16. Listen, ………………………………………………………
17. I shouldn’t have got angry, ……………………………
18. Don’t drop it, ………………………………………………
19. They had to go home, ……………………………………
20. He’d never seen you before, ……………………………

B) Write a sentence with A QUESTION TAG:

1. You are with a friend outside a restaurant. You are looking at the prices. It’s very expensive. What do you say? …….. It’s very expensive, isn’t it? ……………
2. You look out of the window. It’s a beautiful day. What do you say to your friend? It’s ……………………………………………………………………………
3. You’ve just come out of the cinema with your friend. You both really enjoyed the film. You thought it was great. What do you say? The film …………………………………………………………. 
4. Tom’s hair is much shorter. Clearly he has had his hair cut. What do you sat to him? You ……………………………………………………………………….
5. You are shopping. You are trying on a jacket. You look in the mirror: it doesn’t look very nice. What do you say to your friend? It ……………………………………………………………………….
6. You are talking about Bill. You know that Bill works very hard. Everyone knows this. What do you say about Bill? Bill …………………………………………………………………………………

C) Complete the conversation. Put in the QUESTION TAGS:

Mary : Let’s go out somewhere tonight, ………………………………….
Jeff : All right. Where?
Mary : You haven’t got a local paper, ………………………………… . Pass it over here, ………………………………… . Thanks. Well, there’s a disco at the Grand Hotel.
Jeff : Fine, but I haven’t got any money. You couldn’t lend me five pounds, ……………
Mary : OK, I’ll pay then. I’ll meet you outside at eight o’clock. Don’t be late, ……………
D) Put A QUESTION TAG at the end of each sentence:

1. You don’t like this music, ………………………………?
2. Robert isn’t at work today, ………………………………?
3. I’m too late, ……………………………………………?
4. You haven’t seen the newspaper, …………………………?
5. Lynne speaks French and German, …………………………?
6. They didn’t go to the concert, ………………………………?
7. You’d like to have something to eat, …………………………?
8. We’re leaving tomorrow, ………………………………………?
9. You couldn’t do me a favour, …………………………………?
10. You don’t know where Sarah is, ………………………………..?
11. Switch on the light for me, ……………………………………..?
12. Don’t forget to lock the door, ……………………………………..?
13. Nobody was watching the TV, ………………………………………?
14. Everyone will be here soon, ……………………………………..?
15. Nothing terrible has happened, ……………………………………..?
16. There’s plenty of time, ……………………………………………?
17. Pass me that magazine, …………………………………………..?
18. Let’s have a cup of tea, ……………………………………………? 
19. It’s a good restaurant, ……………………………………………? 
20. You haven’t seen my keys, ………………………………………….?

E) Add TAG QUESTIONS to the following:

1. They want to come, ……… don’t they ……………………?
2. Elizabeth is a dentist, …………………………………………?
3. They won’t be here, ……………………………………………?
4. There aren’t any problems, ………………………………………?
5. That is your umbrella, …………………………………………?
6. George is a student, ………………………………………………?
7. He’s learned a lot in the last couple of years, ……………………?
8. He has a bicycle, …………………………………………………?
9. Joan can’t come with us, ……………………………………………?
10. She’ll help us later, …………………………………………………?
11. Peggy would like to come with us to the party, ……………………..?
12. Those aren’t Fred’s books, …………………………………………?
13. You’ve never been to Paris, …………………………………………?
14. Something is wrong with Jane today, ………………………………?
15. Everyone can learn how to swim, ………………………………………?
16. Nobody cheated on the exam, …………………………………………?
17. Nothing went wrong while I was gone, ……………………………? 
18. I am invited, ………………………………………………………?
WORKSHEET 44

SUBJECT: Causatives

A) Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses:

1. The doctor made the patient ........ stay ........ in bed. (stay)
2. Mrs. Crane had her house ........ painted ........ . (paint)
3. The teacher had the class .................. a 2000-word research paper. (write)
4. I made my son .................. the windows before he could go outside to play. (wash)
5. Don got some kids in the neighborhood .................. out his garage. (clean)
6. I went to the bank to have a check .................. . (cash)
7. Tom had a bad headache yesterday, so he got his twin brother Tim .................. to class for him. The teacher didn’t know the difference. (go)
8. When Scott went shopping, he found a jacket he really liked. After he had the sleeves .................. , it fit him perfectly. (shorten)
9. My boss made me .................. my report because he wasn’t satisfied with it. (redo)
10. Alice stopped at the service station to have the tank .................. . (fill)
11. I got Mary .................. me some money so I could go to a movie last night. (lend)
12. Mr. Fields went to a doctor to have the wart on his nose .................. . (remove)
13. Peeling onions always makes me .................. . (cry)
14. Tom Sawyer was supposed to paint the fence, but he didn’t want to do it. He was a very clever boy. Somehow he got his friends .................. it for him. (do)
15. We had a professional photographer .................. pictures of everyone who participated in our wedding. (take)
16. I spilled some tomato sauce on my suit coat. Now I need to get my suit .................. . (clean)

B) Circle the correct one:

1. She has to get her hair .................. .
   a) to do  b) do  c) done  d) did
2. Our teacher is going to make us .................. a tape.
   a) listen to  b) listened to  c) to listen to  d) listen
3. They had to have him .................. their summer house.
   a) painted  b) paint  c) to paint  d) painting
4. Do you know where I can get my car .................. ?
   a) washed  b) to wash  c) wash  d) washes
5. The comedian was not able to make us ..................
   a) laughing  b) to laugh  c) laugh  d) laughed
6. You can’t get that man .................. your radio.
   a) fix  b) to fix  c) fixed  d) fixing
7. I can never make her .................. her mind.
   a) change  b) to change  c) changed  d) changing
8. We had two pictures ..................
   a) take  b) taken  c) to take  d) took
9. When are you going to have your father .................. a book?
   a) bought  b) to buy  c) buy  d) buying
10. Please have the maid ………………… my room.
   a) clean                      b) cleaned                  c) to clean                   d) cleaning

11. I know he stole the money. We’ll get him …………………… .
   a) talk                         b) talking                   c) talked                     d) to talk

12. We had to hire a few men to get the trees ……………………. .
   a) cut down                b) to cut down            c) cutting down         d) cutted down
WORKSHEET 45

SUBJECT: Both … and … / Either … or … / Neither … nor … / Not only … but also …

A) Make sentences BOTH … AND … / EITHER … OR … / NEITHER … NOR … :

Examples: * Tom was late. So was Ann. Both Tom and Ann were late.
* He didn’t write. He didn’t telephone. He neither wrote nor telephoned.

1. The hotel wasn’t clean. And it wasn’t comfortable.
   The hotel was .................................................................
2. It was a very boring movie. It was very long too.
   The movie was .................................................................
3. Is that man’s name Richard? Or is it Robert? It’s one of the two.
   That man’s name ..............................................................
4. I don’t have the time to take a vacation. And I don’t have the money.
   I have ............................................................................
5. We can leave today or we can leave tomorrow- whichever you prefer.
   We ......................................................................................
6. He gave up his job because he needed a change. Also because the pay was low.
   He gave up his job both ......................................................
7. Laura doesn’t smoke. And she doesn’t eat meat.
   ......................................................................................
8. The front of the house needs painting. The back needs painting too.
   ......................................................................................

B) Answer the questions. Use paired conjunctions.

   a) Use BOTH …… AND …… .

1. You have met his father. Have you met his mother?
   Yes, I have met both his father and his mother.
2. The driver was injured in the accident. Was the passenger injured in the accident?
   ......................................................................................
3. Wheat is grown in Kansas. Is corn grown in Kansas?
   ......................................................................................
4. He buys used cars. Does he sell used cars?
   ......................................................................................
5. You had lunch with your friends. Did you have dinner with them?
   ......................................................................................
6. The city suffers from air pollution. Does it suffer from water pollution?
   ......................................................................................

   b) Use NOT ONLY …… BUT ALSO …… .

1. I know you are studying math. Are you studying chemistry too?
   Yes, I’m studying not only math but also chemistry.
2. I know his cousin is living with him. Is his mother-in-law living with him too?
   ......................................................................................
3. I know your country has good universities. Does the United States have good universities too?
   ......................................................................................
4. I know you lost your wallet. Did you lose your keys too?
   
5. I know she goes to school. Does she have a full-time job too?
   
6. I know he bought a coat. Did he buy a new pair of shoes too?
   
   c) Use EITHER ….. OR ….. .

1. John has your book, or Mary has your book. Is that right?
   Yes, either John or Mary has my book.

2. You’re going to give your friend a book for her birthday, or you’re going to give her a pen. Is that right?

3. Your sister will meet you at the airport, or your brother will meet you there. Right?

4. They can go swimming, or they can play tennis. Is that right?

5. You’re going to vote for Mr. Smith, or you’re going to vote for Mr. Jones. Right?

6. You’ll go to New Orleans for your vacation, or you’ll go to Miami. Right?

   d) Use NEITHER ….. NOR ….. .

1. He doesn’t like coffee. Does he like tea?
   No, he likes neither coffee nor tea.

2. Her husband doesn’t speak English. Do her children speak English?

3. The students aren’t wide awake today. Is the teacher wide awake today?

4. They don’t have a refrigerator for their new apartment. Do they have a stove?

5. She doesn’t enjoy hunting. Does she enjoy fishing?

6. The result wasn’t good. Was the result bad?

   e) Combine the following into sentences that contain parallel structure. Used appropriate paired conjunctions: BOTH…AND / NOT ONLY… BUT ALSO / EITHER… OR / NEITHER… NOR:

1. He does not have a pen. He does not have paper.
   He has neither a pen nor paper.


3. You can have tea, or you can have coffee.

4. Arthur is not in class today. Ricardo is not in class today.

5. Arthur is absent. Ricardo is absent.

6. We can fix dinner for them here, or we can take them to a restaurant.
7. She wants to buy a Chevrolet, or she wants to buy a Toyota.

8. The leopard faces extinction. The tiger faces extinction.

9. The library does not have the book I need. The bookstore does not have the book I need.

10. We could fly, or we could take the train.

C) Combine the following using BOTH…AND / NOT ONLY… BUT ALSO / EITHER… OR / NEITHER… NOR:

1. Paul must go to class. Jean must go to class.
   Both Paul and Jean must go to class.

   Paul and Jean speak English.

3. Paul hasn’t left yet. Jean hasn’t left yet.
   Neither Paul nor Jean has left.

4. Shall I go to by air, or shall I go by sea?
   I will go by air or by sea.

5. Paul didn’t stay long. Jean didn’t stay long.
   Paul and Jean didn’t stay long.

6. Paul has a two-car garage. Jean has a two-car garage.
   Paul and Jean have a two-car garage.

7. Shall I work tonight, or shall I go out?
   I will work tonight or go out.

8. Paul’s house is very central. Jean’s house is very central.
   Paul’s and Jean’s house are very central.

   Paul and Jean recognized the man.

10. Shall I have a swim, or shall I go by bus?
    I will have a swim or go by bus.
SUBJECT: Articles

A) Put in A / AN or THE. Sometimes you don’t need either word – you leave it blank.

1. There was ………….. waiter standing at …………. entrance of …………. restaurant. I ordered him …………. glass of …………. vodka with some juice in it.
2. There was ………….. question I wanted to ask …………. biology teacher about …………. cangroo. She had said …………. cangroo carried her baby in …………. kind of bag in …………. front part of …………. her body. I wanted to know how many baby cangroos it could carry at …………. time.
3. “Is that your wife?”
   “No, my wife’s …………. woman in …………. red dress.”
4. I work with …………. man and two women. …………. man is quite nice, but …………. women are not very friendly.
5. What’s in …………. newspaper?
6. Can you show me …………. that book, please?
7. What’s …………. name of …………. woman in …………. blue dress?
8. …………. water turns into …………. ice at 0 degree C.
9. I like …………. steak, but I don’t like …………. eggs.
10. She lives in …………. nice flat on …………. fifth floor of …………. old house.
11. It’s terrible - …………. eggs are $ 2 …………. dozen.
12. There was …………. boy and …………. girl in the room. …………. boy was Japanese but …………. girl looked foreign. She was wearing …………. fur coat.
13. This morning I bought …………. newspaper and …………. magazine. …………. newspaper is in my bag but I don’t know where …………. magazine is.
14. “Have you got …………. car?”
   “No, I’ve never had …………. car in my life.”
15. We don’t go to …………. cinema very much these days. In fact, in …………. town where we live there isn’t …………. cinema.
16. Don’t stay in that hotel. …………. beds are very uncomfortable.
17. After I leave …………. school, I want to go to …………. university.

B) Put in A / AN or THE. Sometimes you don’t need either word – you leave it blank.

1. John Colloway is …………. bank manager. He works in …………. bank in …………. center of …………. London. Every morning he gets up at seven o’clock, has …………. breakfast and …………. cup of …………. coffee, and reads …………. “Times”. Then he goes to …………. work by …………. bus. In …………. morning, he usually makes …………. telephone calls, sees …………. customers and …………. dictates …………. letters. He has …………. lunch at …………. restaurant near …………. bank. In …………. afternoon he works until five or five-thirty, and then goes …………. home. He doesn’t work on …………. Saturdays or Sundays; he goes to …………. cinema or reads. He likes …………. novels and …………. history. He is not married. He has …………. sister in …………. Oxford and …………. brother in …………. London.
2. Have you got …………. camera?
3. You need …………. visa to visit …………. foreign countries, but not all of them.
4. When we reached the city center, …………. shops were still open but most of them were already closed.
5. Jack has got …………. very long legs, so he’s …………. fast runner.
6. I’m looking for …………. job. And did Ann get …………. job she applied for?
7. Did ........ police find ........ person who stole your bicycle?
8. We went out for ........ meal last night. ........ restaurant we went to was excellent.
9. This morning I had ........ boiled egg and toast for breakfast.
10. Tom always gives Ann ........ flowers on her birthday.
11. I went into the shop and asked to speak to ........ manager.
12. There’s no need to buy any milk. ........ milkman brings it every morning.
13. It was warm and sunny, so we decided to sit in ........ garden.
14. Jane is ........ teacher. Her parents were ........ teachers too.
15. Bill’s got ........ big feet.
16. Would you like to be ........ actor?

C) Put a suitable article into the blanks:

1. My neighbour is ........ photographer; let’s ask him for ........ advice about colour films.
2. I had ........ very bad night; I didn’t sleep ........ wink.
3. He is ........ vegetarian; you won’t get ........ meat at his house.
4. ........ youngest boy has just started going to ........ school; ........ eldest boy is at ........ college.
5. I went to ........ school to talk to ........ headmistress. I persuaded her to let Ann give up ........ gymnastics and take ........ ballet lessons instead.
6. There was ........ knock on ........ door. I opened it and found ........ small dark man in ........ check overcoat and ........ soft hat.
7. - Are John and Mary ........ cousins?
   - No, they aren’t ........ cousins; they are ........ brother and ........ sister.
8. ........ postman’s little boy says that he’d rather be ........ dentist than ........ doctor, because ........ dentists don’t get called out at ........ night.
9. - Would you like to hear ........ story about ........ Englishman, ........ Irishman and ........ Scotsman?
   - No. I’ve heard ........ stories about ........ Englishmen, ........ Irishmen and ........ Scotsmen before and they are all ........ same.
10. “ ........ modern burglars don’t hide under ........ beds.” said her daughter.
11. ........ most of ........ stories that ........ people tell about ........ Irish aren’t true.
12. Like many women, she loves ........ tea parties and ........ gossip.
13. On ........ Sundays my father stays in ........ bed till ten o’clock, reading ........ Sunday papers.
14. I have ........ little money left; let’s have dinner in ........ restaurant.
15. - I hope you have ........ lovely time and ........ good weather.
   - But I’m not going for ........ holiday; I’m going on ........ business.
16. During ........ meal he gives her ........ instructions about ........ garden and she tells him ........ village gossip.
17. My mother goes to ........ church in ........ morning, and in ........ afternoon goes to visit ........ friends.

D) Some of the blank spaces below need ARTICLES, others do not. Fill in the articles where needed.

1. Tobacco is one of ........ most important products of ........ South.
2. ........ fresh air is needed by all people.
3. ........ cotton which comes from ........ Alabama is better than ........ cotton which comes from ........ Oklahoma.
4. ........ air in this room is fresh.
5. important products which we get from India are tea, cotton, and rice.
6. telephone seldom rings in our home.
7. silver is conductor of electricity.
8. I get on train at same place every day.
9. rain and sun are needed for raising of vegetables.
10. Mary is waving to us from across street.
11. sun is shining but part of sky is still covered with clouds.
12. women use much make-up.
13. coffee will keep you awake all night.
14. medicine which doctor prescribed helped me.
15. tea seems to keep some people awake.
16. coffee is very strong.
17. In that course, we study history of all important countries of Asia.
18. coffee which comes from Brazil is best.

E) Some of the blank spaces below need ARTICLES, others do not. Fill in the articles where needed.

1. He went to Spain last month.
2. When you go to Spain, be sure to see Madrid.
3. He works in building on corner of Tenth Ave. and 62nd St.
4. Tokyo is largest city in World.
5. traffic on Jones Avenue is heavy.
6. Miami is center of tobacco industry.
8. rivers of eastern part of United States flow toward East Coast.
9. largest river in America is Mississippi.
10. New York subway trains are very comfortable.
11. climate of southern Florida is very nice all year.
12. capital of France is Paris, but capital of England is London.
13. Tenth Street has some very nice shops.
14. Some of Tenth Street shops are very inexpensive, too.
15. President will be on TV tonight.
WORKSHEET 47

SUBJECT: Purpose: So that / to / In order to / In Case

A) Combine the sentences using the words in brackets:

1. Jane gave up smoking because she wanted to save money. (in order to)
   ……….Jane gave up smoking in order to save money. …………..
2. I came here so that I could see you. (in order to)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
3. We put a fence. We want to prevent the rabbit escape.
   …………………………………………………………………………………
4. She went shopping so she could buy herself a television. (to)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
5. I put the food in the fridge because I wanted it to get cold. (in order to)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
6. Jane saved money. She wanted to buy a present for Harry. (in order to)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
7. Harry left early because he didn’t want to miss the bus. (in order not to)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
8. They will let the students use calculators in the exam. They don’t want them to spend a lot of time. (so that)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
9. The teacher tested the students. She wanted to see if they remembered the things they had learnt. (in order to)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
10. She didn’t leave her son home alone. She thought he might have an accident. (in case)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
11. He tried to hide the broken vase. He didn’t want to be punished. (so that)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
12. She wants to sign a contact. She doesn’t want them to change their minds. (in case)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
13. I turned up the radio. I wanted to listen to the news. (so that)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
14. Sue lowered the volume on the TV set. She didn’t want to disturb her roommate. (so that)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
15. I’ll be in my office until late this evening. You may need to get in touch with me. (in case)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
16. I’ll give you my phone number. You may need to speak to me. (in case)
   …………………………………………………………………………………
17. Tom signed his friend’s birthday on the calender. He thought he might forget it. (in case)
   …………………………………………………………………………………

B) Complete the following sentences:

1. He decided to take a taxi so that ……………………………………………………………
2. Mr. Brown booked his room at the hotel in case ………………………………………
3. Betsy studies her lessons regularly so that …………………………………………………
4. Mark phoned his friend in order to ……………………………………………………………
5. You’d better call Susan and remind her the date of the party in case  
……………………………………………………………………………………………
6. I need to buy some laundry detergent so that  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
7. I need a pen so that  ……………………………………………………………………………
8. I’m taking a bus instead of flying so that  ……………………………………………………………………………
9. Ralph borrowed some money from his friend so that  ……………………………………………………………………………
10. Martina is trying to improve her English so that  ……………………………………………………………………………
11. ………………………………………………………………………. so that his children will have a better life.
12. ……………………………………………………………………… so that you can be ready to leave on time.
13. Mary hurried to get the child out of the road so that  ……………………………………………………………………………
14. I took off my gloves in order to  ……………………………………………………………………………
15. ……………………………………………………………………………………… in order to erase a mistake in his composition.
16. ……………………………………………………………………………………… so that I could tell him the news in person.
17. I think I’d better clean up my flat in case  ……………………………………………………………………………
18. She locked the door before going to bed in case  ……………………………………………………………………………
19. The teacher reminded the students the common test dates in case  ……………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………
20. He always carries his umbrella in case  ……………………………………………………………………………

C) Combine each pair of sentences using “ IN CASE “:

1. You’d better take a sweater. It might get cold.  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
2. We’d better book a table. The restaurant might be full.  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
3. You ought to insure your jewellery. It might get stolen.  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
4. I’m watching this saucepan. The water might boil over.  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
5. I’ll leave you my phone number. You might want to contact me.  
………………………………………………………………………………………………

D) Join the sentences:

1. He tried to find a car park. He wanted to park his car. (in order to)  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
2. Mrs. Brown hid the ball. She didn’t Bill to play football. (so that)  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
3. They got up early. They didn’t want to miss the bus. (in case)  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
4. Mary is wearing glasses. She wants to see better. (so that)  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
5. My father often takes his car to the mechanic. He doesn’t want it to break down. (in case)  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
6. Molly is eating less bread. She doesn’t want to put on weight. (in case)  
………………………………………………………………………………………………
7. Sally usually wears a thick coat. She doesn’t want to catch a cold. (in order not to)
8. Mr. Short used a long ladder. He wanted to reach the high ceiling. (so that)

9. My father gave me extra money. He didn’t want me to borrow any from my friends. (in case)

10. Andrew’s friends visited him. They wanted to congratulate him on his graduation. (in order to)

11. I’m learning English. I want to get a better job. (to)

12. The driver stopped. Then the children could cross the road. (so that)

13. Tom put the cream in the fridge. That would keep it cool. (to)

14. Mark is going to repair the roof. Then the rain won’t come in. (so that)

15. We often switch off the heating. It saves money. (in order to)

16. Pamela wore boots. Her feet wouldn’t get wet. (so that)

E) Complete the sentences:

1. She’ll start on a diet so that ..............................................................
2. They went to Migros so that ..............................................................
3. She bought a new dress so that ..............................................................
4. I’ll give you a map so that ..............................................................
5. Take your umbrella in case ..............................................................
6. I left the key for you in case ..............................................................
7. Take your torch with you in case ..............................................................
8. I closed the door of my room in order not to ..............................................................
9. Jeremy is going to wear a suit in order to ..............................................................
10. David put on the kettle in order to ..............................................................
11. Alec hurried in order not to ..............................................................
12. I closed the door of my room in order not to ..............................................................
A) Complete the sentences in A using BECAUSE or BECAUSE OF and an idea from B. Use each idea in B only one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. He phoned the police</td>
<td>a) his bad leg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I didn’t have any lunch</td>
<td>b) I thought it might rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Our plane was delayed</td>
<td>c) I wasn’t hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. He went to Paris</td>
<td>d) he’d lost his wallet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. I took an umbrella</td>
<td>e) the fog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. He couldn’t run very fast</td>
<td>f) he wanted to learn French</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. …. He phoned the police because he’d lost his wallet. ............................
2. .................................................................................................
3. .................................................................................................
4. .................................................................................................
5. .................................................................................................
6. .................................................................................................

B) Choose the correct answers:

1. As / As a result it was such a beautiful day, we decided to have a picnic.
2. It was his birthday because / so we decided to buy him a present.
3. As a result / Since all the seats on the train were taken, we had to stand.
4. The banks were closed and as a result / because we couldn’t get any money.
5. I didn’t find the book very interesting and so / as I didn’t finish it.
6. We couldn’t drive across the bridge as a result / because it was closed.
7. She had the best qualifications and she so / therefore got the job.
8. I haven’t got much money as / so I can’t afford a new car.

C) Join each pair of sentences using SO / SUCH ….. (THAT):

1. It was a very warm evening. We had dinner outside in the garden.
   .................................................................................................
2. He was very nervous. He couldn’t eat anything.
   .................................................................................................
3. Our neighbours’ party was very noisy. We couldn’t sleep.
   .................................................................................................
4. The restaurant was very crowded. They couldn’t find anywhere to sit down.
   .................................................................................................
5. We were all having a good time. We didn’t want to stop.
   .................................................................................................
6. He’s got a very good memory. He never needs to write anything down.
   .................................................................................................
SUBJECT: Contrast: although, even though, though, in spite of, despite, while, whereas, however

A) Rephrase the sentences beginning with the words in brackets:

1. She has plenty of money, but she is very mean. (although)
   .................................................................

2. They have a car, but they rarely use it. (though)
   ...........................................................................

3. He was innocent, but he was sent to prison. (although)
   ...........................................................................

4. He was a number of relatives living nearby, but he never visits them. (even though)
   ...........................................................................

5. She never takes any kind of exercise, but she is quite fit and healthy. (even though)
   ...........................................................................

B) Rephrase the sentences using the words in brackets and a noun:

1. They went out for a walk, even though the weather was bad. (despite)
   ...........................................................................

2. She managed to write, even though her hand was injured. (in spite of)
   ...........................................................................

3. All the trains were on time, even though the snow was heavy. (despite)
   ...........................................................................

4. Our coach didn’t arrive late, even though the traffic was terrible. (in spite of)
   ...........................................................................

5. A lot of people buy those houses, even though the prices are high. (despite)
   ...........................................................................

6. He stayed up late, even though he was very tired. (despite)
   ...........................................................................

7. I didn’t buy the car, even though I had the money. (despite)
   ...........................................................................

8. He stayed outside in the cold weather, even though he felt ill. (despite)
   ...........................................................................

9. People continue to smoke, even though they know the dangers. (in spite of)
   ...........................................................................

C) Sally and Peter are good friends, but they are very different.

Compare Sally and Peter. Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea in B.
Make sentences using WHILE / WHEREAS:

A

1. She likes hard work.
2. She likes jazz and pop music.
3. She likes going out a lot.
4. She’s very practical.
5. She’s very generous.

B

a) He prefers classical music.
b) He prefers staying at home.
c) He can be rather mean.
d) He’s quite lazy.
e) He’s quite idealistic.

1. ...........She likes hard work, while / whereas he’s quite lazy.........................
SUBJECT: Gerund or Infinitive

A) Use the GERUND or INFINITIVE forms of the verbs:

1. He gave up .................................. (gamble).
2. He told me .................. (try) ................................ (come) early.
3. I advised him ..................... (ask) the bus conductor ......................... (tell) him where ................................ (get) off.
4. We are looking forward to ......................... (read) your new book.
5. I don’t enjoy ................................ (go) to the dentist.
6. A: Did you remember ................................ (give) him the money?
   B: No, I didn’t. I still have it in my pocket; but I’ll ....................... (see) him tonight and I promise ................................ (not / forget) this time.
7. I saw the plane .................. (crash) in to the hill and ......................... (burst) into flames.
8. He is said .................. (be) the best surgeon in the country.
9. We don’t want anybody .............. (know) we are here.
10. A: Why didn’t you pay the bill for him?
    B: I offered ...................... (pay), but he refused.
11. He was accused of .................... (steal) the valuable vase.
12. I don’t feel like ...................... (work); what about ......................... (go) to a disco instead?
13. Imagine ...................... (live) with someone who never stops .................. (talk).
14. A: Do the boys tidy their own rooms?
    B: They are supposed ....................... (tidy), but they don’t always.
15. I hope the children won’t go near the water. I warned them ..................... (not / go) near it.
16. Try to avoid ....................... (make) him angry.
17. Would you mind ...................... (write) your name and address on the back of the cheque?
18. After ......................... (read) this article, will you give up ..................... (smoke)?
19. I suggest ......................... (hold) another meeting next week.
20. I have no intention of .................. (go) to that film; I couldn’t bear ................ (see) my favorite actress in such a dreadful part.
21. Try ......................... (forget) it; it’s not worth ......................... (worry) about.
22. I advise you ....................... (start) ......................... (look) for a flat at once.
23. He hates .................. (answer) the phone, and very often just lets it .............. (ring).
24. It is usually easier .................. (learn) a subject by ...................... (read) books than by ................... (listen) to lectures.
25. Don’t forget ...................... (lock) the door before ....................... (go) to bed.
26. I arranged ....................... (meet) them here.
27. He tried ....................... (explain) but she refused ....................... (listen).
28. I regret ....................... (inform) you that your application has been refused.
29. Your windows need .................. (clean); would you like me .................. (do) them for you?
30. I can’t help .................. (sneeze); I caught a cold yesterday from ..................... (sit) in a draught.
32. You’ll never regret .................. (do) a kind action.
33. A: Did you remember …………………. (lock) the door?
    B: No, I didn’t. I’d better …………………. (go) and …………………. (do) it now.
34. I’m very sorry for ………………… (be) late; it was good of you ………………… (wait) for me.
35. You don’t need ………………… (ask) his permission every time you want ………………… (leave) the room.
36. I except him ……………………. (apologize) to me.
37. We got tired of ……………………. (wait) for the weather ………………… (clear) and finally decided ………………… (set) out in the rain.
38. I can hear the bell ………………… (ring), but nobody seem to be coming ………………… (open) the door.
39. There are people who can’t help ………………… (laugh) when they see someone …………………. (slip) on a banana skin.
40. They don’t allow ……………………. (smoke) here.

B) Use the GERUND or INFINITIVE forms of the verbs in brackets:

1. After she had decided ………………… (stay) in Turkey, she got used to ………………… (eat) Turkish foods.
2. They seem …………………. (have) plenty of money.
3. I’m sorry sir, I’m late, but I promise ………………….. (not / be) late again.
4. I remember ……………………. (go) to the cinema with my girl friend when I was a teenager.
5. He is ashamed of …………………… (steal) that money.
6. I think we’d better ……………………. (exchange) names and addresses.
7. Would you mind ………………….. (show) me how ……………………. (work) the new machine?
8. She warned her child …………………….. (not / touch) the wire.
9. Can you manage …………………….. (finish) ……………………. (pack) these parcels alone?
10. His doctor advised him ……………………. (give up) …………………. (sit) up late at night?

C) Supply the appropriate form of the verbs:

1. She never admits ……………………. (make) mistakes.
2. Please avoid ………………….. (be) alone with him.
3. When you finish ……………………. (do) your homework, call me.
4. She’s considering ……………………. (be) a member of T.E.D. Club.
5. On Sundays I always practise …………………. (talk) English with my aunt.
6. Do you fancy ……………………. (play) tennis this afternoon?
7. I dislike ……………………. (study) history.
8. Please try to escape …………………. (make) him angry.
9. I enjoy ………………….. (walk) in the rain.
10. She can’t afford ……………………. (buy) a car.
11. I decided ……………………. (go) on Saturday.
12. Don’t forget ……………………. (tell) him the news.
13. They managed ……………………. (pass) their exams.
14. He refused ……………………. (see) me again.
15. Remember ……………………. (post) the letters.
16. She seems ……………………. (be) happy.
17. He waited ……………………. (get) his salary.
18. He’ll hire a man ……………………… (kill) them.
19. He advised ……………………… (study) hard.
20. I’m sorry for ……………………… (keep) you late.
21. I’m interested in ……………………… (play) tennis.
22. Instead of ……………………… (study) Alice watched TV.
23. He apologized for ……………………… (come) late.
24. He succeeded in ……………………… (pass) his exam.
25. I’m looking forward to ……………………… (go) to London.
26. We’re thinking of ……………………… (travel) by train.
27. Do you feel like ……………………… (go) for a swim?
28. Do you have any good reason for ……………………… (not / call) me?
29. Thank you for ……………………… (help) me carry the goods.
30. The little boy’s mother warned him ……………………… (not / eat) so many apples.
31. They reminded me ……………………… (do) my assignment.
32. The children are excited about ……………………… (go) to the movies.
33. She always puts off ……………………… (do) the laundry.
34. Bob refused ……………………… (talk) about his problems.
35. Cindy told him ……………………… (not / wait) for her.
36. He suggested ……………………… (go) home when he got sick.
37. Who is responsible for ……………………… (tidy) the room?
38. Henry is quite good at ……………………… (make up) stories.
39. We’re planning on ……………………… (go / swim) this weekend.
40. I couldn’t persuade him ……………………… (come) with me.
41. Can you touch your toes without ……………………… (bend) your knees?
42. I can’t help ……………………… (look) at her.
43. Do you have any difficulty in ……………………… (speak) English?
44. Please remind me ……………………… (take) my photo.
45. I persuaded my mother ……………………… (give) me permission to go out.
46. He will arrange ……………………… (meet) me at the airport.
47. He waited ……………………… (get) his salary.
48. I regret ……………………… (say) you that he is ill.
49. Jim can’t stand ……………………… (be) interrupted.
50. When Sam got tired, he stopped ……………………… (work).
51. I remember ……………………… (play) with dolls when I was a child.
52. I regret ……………………… (not / listen) to my father’s advice. He was right.
53. The thief was accused of ……………………… (steal) a woman purse.

D) Complete with GERUND or INFINITIVE:

1. He suggested ……………………… dinner in a Chinese restaurant.
2. I’ll give it back when I finish ……………………… it.
3. I remembered ……………………… to the chemists for you. Here’s your medicine.
4. I remember ……………………… him last night.
5. Would you like ……………………… to some music?
6. I regret ……………………… that I won’t be able to come to the meeting.
SUBJECT: Gerund or Infinitive

A) Use the GERUND to connect the following:

1. Peter’s sometimes late. He can’t help it.
   ……….Peter can’t help being late…………………………………………………
2. Gordon has to get up early. He dislikes it.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
3. Paul asked Mary to come home. He remembers it.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
4. Jill occasionally speaks Spanish. She can’t avoid it.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
5. Jim didn’t take his holiday until June. He delayed it.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
6. Jim was speaking French when Bob came in. He stopped.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
7. Jim wanted to see the race. He didn’t want to miss it.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
8. You may have an accident if you drive that car. You risk it.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
9. I wouldn’t like to work in an office. I don’t fancy it.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
10. I spent all my money. I regret it, because I’ve got none left now.
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
11. Henry has his lunch very late. He is used to it.
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
12. John saw the girl. He denies it.
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
13. I had dinner with a film star. I’ll never forget it.
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
14. Richard took the books home with him. He admitted it.
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
15. Mary wanted to have dinner at a restaurant. She suggested it.
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………
16. You should speak English all the time. You should practise it.
    ……………………………………………………………………………………………

B) Complete the sentences using the GERUND (after prepositions):

1. David is studying. He’s bored.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
2. Gordon likes to watch football. He’s keen.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
3. Peter wants to learn English. He’s interested.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
4. Sheila keeps her own room tidy. She’s responsible.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
5. Sally will visit her aunt. She’s excited.
   ……………………………………………………………………………………………
6. Swan will meet Gordon. She is looking forward.

7. Paul doesn’t want to be misunderstood. He’s afraid.

8. Jane has to do the housework by herself. She’s tired.

9. John has to get up early. He is used.

10. Tom passed all his exams. He succeeded.

C) Supply an appropriate form GERUND or INFINITIVE of the verbs in parentheses:

1. Mary reminded me ........................ (be / not) late for the meeting.
2. We went for a walk after we finished ......................... (clean) up the kitchen.
3. When do you expect ........................ (leave) on your trip?
4. The baby started ......................... (talk) when she was about eighteen months old.
5. I’m getting tired. I need ...................... (take) a break.
6. I’ve decided ............................. (stay) here over vacation and ......................
   (paint) my room.
7. Sometimes students avoid ...................... (look) at the teacher if they don’t want
   ...................... (answer) a question.
8. The travel agent advised us ......................... (not / wait) until August.
9. We’re going out for dinner. Would you like ..................... (join) us?
10. Mrs. Allen promised ......................... (come) tomorrow.
11. My boss expects me ....................... (complete) this work as soon as possible.
12. Even though I asked the people in front of me at the movie ................. (be)
    quiet, they kept ...................... (talk).
13. Joan and David were considering ..................... (get) married in June, but they
    finally decided ..................... (wait) until August.
14. He doesn’t mind ..................... (be) alone.
15. The teacher seems .................... (be) in a good mood today.
16. Mrs. Jackson warned her young son ...................... (not / touch) the
    hot stove.
17. Jack advised me ..................... (rent) a new apartment.
18. His teacher encourages him .................. (study) harder.
19. Lucy pretended ..................... (know) the answer to my question.
20. Could you please stop ..................... (make) so much noise?
21. He doesn’t let anyone ...................... (smoke) in his office.
A) Fill in the blanks with MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR:

1. This is Tim. .................. car is very fast.
2. Jane and I are in the garden. ............... books are in the classroom.
3. Are you a driver? Where is ............... car?
4. I am a driver? This is ............... school.
5. She is my friend. ............... name is Meltem.
6. These are Mr. and Mrs. Brown. That’s ............... house.
7. Look at that cat. ............... eyes are green.
8. Your friend and you are sad today. What’s ............... problem?
9. That’s Mr. Green. He is driving ............... car.
10. Ali’s and Can’s bags are heavy. ............... bags are full.
11. Gökçe and Meltem are listening to pop music. ............... mother is cooking in the kitchen.
12. The dog is eating a bone. ............... teeth are very sharp.
13. Are you and your sister ready? ............... friend is waiting for you in the car.
14. A: What’s ............... job?
   B: I’m a mechanic.
15. Madonna is a famous singer. ............... new records are great.
16. Robert has got a dog. ............... name is Bingo.
17. We have got a new house in İzmir. ............... new house is very large.
18. The boys are riding ............... bicycles in the garden.
19. Ayşegül is going to school. ............... school is very far.
20. Sue and Mary are wearing ear-rings. ............... ear-rings are silver.

B) Rewrite these sentences using HE, SHE, IT, THEY, WE, HIS, HER, THEIR, OUR, ITS:

1. Jane’s father is very thin.
   .................................................................
2. Men’s trousers are very expensive.
   .................................................................
3. Jim’s shirt is very long.
   .................................................................
4. Is your brother a businessman?
   .................................................................
5. My mother and I would like some tea.
   .................................................................
6. These are Ayse’s and my books.
   .................................................................
7. Mrs. Brown’s daughters are in the garden.
   .................................................................
8. Where is Gökçe’s mother?
   .................................................................
9. My father’s car is blue.
   .................................................................
10. That rabbit is grey. The rabbit’s ears are long.
11. The students’ books are in the classroom.

12. This is Mrs. Brown’s coat, but these are the children’s coats.

C. Rewrite the underlined words using MINE, YOURS, HIS, HERS, OURS, THEIRS:

1. This is Ayşe’s coat.

2. It is my chocolate. Don’t eat!


4. A: Look at these keys. Are they our keys?
   B: No, they are not your keys. They are my mother’s keys.

5. A: Are those your glasses or my glasses on the table?
   B: I think, they are your glasses. My glasses aren’t on the table. They are in my bag.

D. Fill in the blanks using MINE, YOURS, HIS, HERS, OURS, THEIRS:

1. A: Is this John’s tie?
   B: Yes, it is ............

2. My umbrella isn’t black. ............... is grey.

3. There is a car near your house. Is it ...............?

4. That green shirt isn’t Ayşe’s. ............... is blue.

5. Pass this ball to us. It is .............

6. They don’t like sandwiches. These sandwiches are not .................

7. Don’t take these keys. They are not .................

8. A: There is a pair of brown gloves here. Are they your gloves or my gloves?
   B: I haven’t got brown gloves. They aren’t ................., they are .................

9. A: Is their house old?
   B: No, ................. is very old.

10. Can I take your pen? ................. is at home.

E. Fill in the blanks with ME, YOU, HIM, HER, THEM, US, IT:

1. We are playing in the garden and Jim is playing with .................

2. Are the lights on? Turn ................. off!

3. Where is my book? I’m looking for .................

4. She is very tired. Help .................

5. I’m very thirsty. Give ................. a glass of water.

6. This is Ahmet’s pen. Give it to .................

7. Look at .................. Are they your friends?

8. Are you John Brown? There is a letter for .................
F. Fill in the blanks with MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, THEIR, ME, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, US, THEM, MINE, YOURS, HERS, HIS, OURS, THEIRS where necessary:

1. Is that Jim’s tie? Show …………… this tie.
2. There is a pen on the table. Give …………… to me.
3. Pass these books to your friends. They are ……………
4. A: Is this my umbrella?
   B: No, it isn’t …………… umbrella. …………… is on the table.
5. Gökçe and I are in the classroom. …………… bags are under the desk over there. Could you bring …………… to ……………?
6. Mr. and Mrs. Brown are at the door. This is …………… key. Please give …………… to …………….
7. A: Have you got a green pullover?
   B: No, …………… isn’t green. It’s blue.
8. Look at that man. …………… name is John Brown. This passport is ……………. Give …………… to …………….

G. Rewrite the underlined parts using ME, HIM, HER, THEM, US, IT:

1. There are some books on the desk. Look at these books.

2. She is turning the radio on.

3. The teacher is asking Jane a question.

4. Take your shoes off.

5. The man is looking at Ali and me.

6. Jim is giving his father some tea.

7. This is the dog’s meat. Give the meat to the dog.

8. Is Tom eating any oranges?

9. Give the milk to that cat.

10. Could you pass the salt to your mother?

H) Complete the passage. Use these words.

Hello. …………… name is Patrick. I’m nine. I have got a brother. His name is Andy and he’s eleven. We are on holiday in Spain. The hotel is very good and …………… swimming-pool is large.

Andy and I have got a sister. …………… name is Liz. She’s six years old. …………… mother and father are in the restaurant now. Their friends, Mr. and Mrs. Bolton, are in the restaurant, too. …………… two sons are in the pool.

Andy has got a girl-friend. …………… girl-friend’s name is Sandra. She’s in …………… class at school.

Where is your family? Is …………… family here, too?
A) Choose the correct answers:

1. We / Us met Sally yesterday afternoon. She / Her came to the cinema with we / us.
2. I phoned Sarah last night and gave she / her the message.
3. My brother is older than I / me, but he / him isn’t as tall as I / me am.
4. “Who wants a cup of coffee?” “I / Me.”
5. A: Have you seen Simon today?”
   B: Yes. I / Me saw he / him this morning. He / Him was going to the swimming pool.
6. A: What did those people want?
   B: They / Them asked I / me to help they / them.

B) Complete the sentences using the pronouns in the box:

I you he she it we they
me you him her it us them

1. Peter and I are going out this evening. ……………’re going to the cinema. Would you like to come with ……………? 
2. Where are my keys? I put …………… on the table a moment ago, but now ……………’ve disappeared.
3. ……………’s usually quite cold in New York in the winter.
4. A: What did you think of the film, Simon?
   B: …………… enjoyed …………… very much.
5. ……………’s strange that Kate didn’t come to the meeting.
6. A: What do the government plan to do about education?
   B: …………… say that ……………’re going to build more schools.
7. …………… aren’t allowed to drive a car in Britain until ……………’re 17 years old.
8. If you have any problems, just tell someone and they ……………’ll help you.
9. How far is …………… from Madrid to Paris?
10. My sister and I are quite different. ……………’s much more serious than …………… am.

C) Choose the correct answers:

1. We know their / theirs telephone number, but they don’t know our / ours.
2. My / Mine car wasn’t as expensive as her / hers.
3. A: How are your / yours children?
   B: Fine, thanks. How are your / yours?
4. Maria has got her / hers suitcase, but her / hers friends haven’t got their / theirs.
5. Our / Ours flat isn’t as big as their / theirs, but our / ours is much more comfortable.
6. Have you seen my / mine coat?
SUBJECT: Reflexive Pronouns

A) Complete the sentences using MYSELF, YOURSELF, HIMSELF, HERSELF, ITSELF, OURSELVES, YOURSELVES, THEMSELVES:

1. Sue’s children are too young to look after …………………………….
2. An elephant hurt ……………………… when it tried to get out of the zoo yesterday.
3. I couldn’t borrow my mother’s car last night because she was using it …………….. .
4. I don’t need any help. I can take care of ……………………………….
5. Mr. Woods fell over and hurt ……………………………….. when he was running for a bus.
6. Would you all like to help ……………………………….. to sandwiches and cakes?
7. Sarah and I didn’t really enjoy ……………………………….. at the disco last night?
8. I taught …………………………….. to play the guitar; I’ve never had lessons.

B) Complete each sentence using BY + A REFLEXIVE PRONOUN:

1. A: Who did you go to the cinema with?
   B: Nobody, I went …………………………………………………….. .
2. Since the old lady’s husband died, she’s been living ………………………………………….. .
3. Did someone help you move all the furniture, or did you do it all ……………………………….. ?
4. They need some help; they can’t manage …………………………………………………….. .
5. The dog opened the door …………………………………………………….. .

C) Complete the sentences using a REFLEXIVE PRONOUN:

1. I didn’t buy that cake from the shop. I made it ……………………………….. .
2. A: Who built your swimming pool for you?
   B: Nobody. We built it …………………………………………………….. .
3. Did someone phone the doctor for you? Or did you phone him ……………………………….. ?
4. A: Who told you they were moving?
   B: They told me …………………………………………………….. .
5. Mr. Mason ……………………………….. offered me the job.
6. Sally didn’t buy that sweater, she made it ……………………………….. .

D) Finish the sentences with a REFLEXIVE PRONOUN:

1. He looked at …………………………… in the mirror.
2. I’m not angry with you. I’m angry with …………………………………………………….. .
3. Margaret had a nice time in London. She enjoyed …………………………………………………….. .
4. My friends had a nice time in London. They enjoyed …………………………………………………….. .
5. I picked up a very hot plate and burnt …………………………………………………….. .
6. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about …………………………………………………….. .
7. I want to know more about you. Tell me about …………………………………………………….. .
8. Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after …………………………………………………….. !
E) Complete the answers to the questions using MYSELF, YOURSELF, ITSELF etc.

1. Who repaired the bicycle for you?
   Nobody. I .... **repaired it myself.** ...........................................

2. Did Brian have his hair cut by a hairdresser?
   No. He cut ..................................................................................

3. Do you want me to post that letter for you?
   No, I’ll .................................................................

4. Who told you that Linda was getting married?
   Linda .................................................................
SUBJECT: Certainty, Possibility, Impossibility and Advisability

A) Rewrite the sentences using the modals of CERTAINTY, IMPOSSIBILITY and POSSIBILITY:

1. Perhaps Jane will lend Tom some money.
   1. Perhaps Jane lent Tom some money.
2. It is possible that she won’t invite you to the party.
   2. It is possible that she didn’t invite him to the party.
3. Perhaps she is asleep.
   3. Perhaps she was asleep.
4. I’m sure he isn’t tired.
   4. I’m sure he wasn’t tired.
5. It is impossible that Mary knows my phone number.
   5. It is impossible that Mary knew his address.
6. I’m sure she reads adventure books a lot.
   6. I’m sure she wrote to the bank.
7. Maybe those children are lost.
   7. Maybe those children were lost.
8. Perhaps Mary is feeling comfortable.
   8. I’m sure she is driving carefully.
9. It is impossible that Lucy is studying in her room.
   9. It is impossible that Lucy is studying in her room.
10. I’m sure he isn’t helping his father now.
   10. I’m sure he isn’t helping his father now.
11. It is possible that people will be traveling between the planets.
   11. It is possible that people will be traveling between the planets.

B) Rewrite using modals to show CERTAINTY, POSSIBILITY, IMPOSSIBILITY:

1. Perhaps Peter lend some money to Linda.
   1. Perhaps Peter lends some money to Linda.
2. It is impossible that Ken saw me because he wasn’t wearing his glasses.
   2. It is impossible that Ken saw me because he wasn’t wearing his glasses.
3. Perhaps Martin didn’t receive my letter because he didn’t reply.

4. I’m sure he knows about the new project.

5. It’s impossible that he forgot the meeting. Because I called him this morning.

6. It’s possible that she will move to her new flat next week.

C) Fill in the blanks with the modal verbs to show CERTAINTY, POSSIBILITY, IMPOSSIBILITY:

1. He drank two glasses of water, he ………………………………….. (be) thirsty.
2. He isn’t more than 15 years old, he ………………………………….. (have) a driving licence.
3. He ………………………………….. (watch) TV in his room, because there isn’t any noise coming.
4. The solution ………………………………….. (be) correct, because I looked up the answer key.
5. A: Do you smell fish?
   B: Yes. Someone ………………………………….. cooking fish.
6. I’m not sure, he ………………………………….. (be) an actor, he is very handsome and rich.

D) Make sentences using CERTAINTY, POSSIBILITY and IMPOSSIBILITY:

1. She / not / work / yesterday, / it / Sunday.

2. They / not / lose / the match. / They / play / well.

3. There / be / election / early / next year, / because / we / government / problems.

4. Betty / fail / not / last exam. / She / do / all the answers / correctly.

E) Fill in the blanks using the verbs expressing CERTAINTY, POSSIBILITY and IMPOSSIBILITY:

1. Her face is red. She ………………………………….. be telling a lie.
2. He is working hard. He ………………………………….. be ill.
3. A: Have you done this puzzle?
   B: Yes, I’ve got the same answer as you. It ………………………………….. be correct.
   A: Well, the answer in the book is different. So we ………………………………….. be right.
4. A: Are John and Mary married?
   B: They ………………………………….. be married. They have rings on their fingers.
5. You’ve been resting all day; you ………………………………….. be tired.
6. I can hear Jane speaking but she’s alone in the room. She ………………………………….. be talking to a friend on the phone.
7. A: Tom has been in his room for over an hour. What do you suppose he is doing?
   B: I don’t know. He ………………………………….. be reading a book or sleeping, but he ………………………………….. be studying because it is too late.
8. A: I need to call Howard. Do you know which hotel he’s staying at in Boston?
   B: Well, he ………………………………………. (stay) at the Holiday Inn, but I’m not
   sure. I think he ………………………………………. (stay) at the Hilton, because it’s too far away from the city center.

9. A: Do you smell smoke?
   B: I sure do. Something ………………………………………. (burn).

10. There ……………………………………. (not / be) a meeting on Friday because the director is ill.

F) Rewrite the following sentences using modal verbs used for expressing CERTAINTY, POSSIBILITY and IMPOSSIBILITY:

1. Tom gets excellent grades. I’m sure he is very intelligent.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

2. Perhaps Tony is in the sports center.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

3. It’s possible that Liz won’t come to the party.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

4. It’s possible that Rose is studying to be a lawyer.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

5. It’s impossible that he is Canadian; I’ve ever seen his identity card.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

6. I’m sure he goes to the theatre a lot.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

7. I’m sure long skirts aren’t in fashion this year.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

8. Perhaps she won’t be here tomorrow.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

9. Their baby-boy is ill. It is impossible that they are going to the party.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

10. I’m sure he is taking the money to the bank.
    ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

11. Perhaps people will be living on the moon in the future.
    ………………………………………………………………………………………………..

12. It is possible that it will rain this afternoon.
    ………………………………………………………………………………………………..
SUBJECT: Perfect Modals

A) Complete the sentences using PERFECT MODALS:

1. We didn’t go out last night. We ……………………………………….. (go) to the cinema but we decided to stay at home.
2. Jerry passed the examination. He didn’t study very much for it. The exam ……………… ………………………………………. (be) very difficult.
3. A: I wonder where Tom was going when you saw him.
   B: He …………………………………………… (go) to work.
4. Thank you for doing the washing-up but you ……………………………………….. (do) it really. I was going to do it later.
5. The driver in front stopped suddenly without warning and I drove in to the back of his car. It wasn’t my fault. He ……………………………………….. (give) warning that he was going to stop.
6. A: How do you think the fire started?
   B: Well, I suppose someone ………………………………………. (drop) a cigarette.
7. A: What time is it?
   B: Well, we came at seven, and I’m sure we’ve been here for at least an hour. So it ……………………………………….. (be) around eight o’clock.
8. A: Jack was absent yesterday afternoon. Where was he?
   B: I don’t know. He ………………………………………… (go) to a movie or he ………………………………………… (be) at home.
9. I had a test this morning. I didn’t do well on the test because I didn’t study for it last night. I ……………………………………….. (study) it.

B) Fill in the blanks using MUST (HAVE), CAN’T (HAVE), MAY-MIGHT-COULD (HAVE):

1. She knew everything about our plans. She ……………………………………….. (listen) to our conversation.
2. He ……………………………………….. (eat) the roasted beef when we were out. He is a vegetarian.
3. Mrs. White bought a new fur coat! She ……………………………………….. (win) a lottery.
4. John said he would ring, but he hasn’t. He ……………………………………….. (forget) all about it.
5. It is possible that he wasn’t taken to the cinema last weekend. He ……………………………………….. (not / take) to the cinema.
6. The children ……………………………………….. (study) in the library now, because they have a test tomorrow.
7. The singer has got a sore throat, so she ……………………………………….. (sing) at the concert.
8. I ……………………………………….. (be) at home this evening or I ……………………………………….. (be) but I’m not sure.
C) Rewrite the following sentences using MUST / CAN’T / MAY / MIGHT with the suitable infinitive forms (+infinitive or +perfect infinitive) according to their tenses:

1. It is possible that they will not reach agreement. 
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………
2. Perhaps you found you made a mistake. 
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………
3. It is certain that our boss will give a rise in our salary. 
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………
4. It is impossible that she won the beauty contest last year. 
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………
5. Perhaps parents will find that they cannot understand the new teaching methods being introduced in primary schools. 
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………
6. It is not impossible that the Government’s policy will prove to be little short of disastrous. 
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………
7. I’m sure Jane got 5 in her last exam. 
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………
8. I’m sure you will catch the 5 o’clock train. 
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………
9. It is possible that he changed his mind after I had offered him the job. 
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………
10. I’m sure Tom didn’t visit his parents last year because he was abroad and very busy. 
    ………………………………………………………………………………………………

D) Complete the responses to the statements, using MUST or CAN’T to suggest what seems to be most likely explanations:

1. His fiancée writes him everyday. She must ……………………………………………
2. I don’t seem to have my key with me. I must ………………………………………
3. He drives a Rolls-Royce and his wife a Mercedes. They must …………………
4. He has no idea what the book is about. He can’t ………………………………
5. He talks about going to the moon next year. He must …………………………
6. She didn’t reply to his letter. She can’t …………………………………………
7. He wears glasses all the time. His eyesight can’t ………………………………
8. He said he would ring, but he hasn’t. He must …………………………………
9. The last bus has already gone. It must ………………………………………….. than I thought.
10. I’m amazed that she married him so soon. She can’t …………………………
SUBJECT: Possessive “apostrophe –s-” or “of”

A) Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets with the POSSESSIVE ‘S or OF:

Example: Have you seen Steven Spielberg’s new film? (the new film / Steven Spielberg)
Have you repaired the wheel of the bicycle? (the wheel / the bicycle)

1. We had to leave the cinema early so we didn’t see …………………………………….
   (the end / the film)
2. We met Sue and Frank at …………………………………………………… . (the party / Sarah)
3. My flat is on ……………………………………………………………….. (the top floor / the house)
4. The bus crashed into ……………………………………………………… (the back / my car)
5. We heard the news from ……………………………………………………. (a friend / the
   woman who works in the post office)
6. There’s a hospital at ………………………………………………………. (the end / this road)
7. I’ve spoken to ………………………………………………………………. (the parents / the girls)
8. The police want to interview ………………………………………….. . (the manager /
   the Black Cat Club)

B) Complete the sentences using the correct form of the POSSESSIVE ‘S:

1. What is your friend ……… name?
2. Sarah found somebody ……… credit cards in the street.
3. The Eiffel Tower is Paris ……… most famous landmark.
4. The boys ……… bedroom has just been painted.
5. I read about a murder in this morning ………. newspaper.
6. Can you borrow your parents ………. car at the weekend?
7. I need to get some medicine. Is there a chemist ………. near here?

C) Rewrite the following using the correct POSSESSIVE form:

1. the butterflies – the wings ……………. the butterflies’ wings ……………………
2. the students – the books …………………………………………………………….
3. drive – three hours ………………………………………………………………..
4. the department store – the staff …………………………………………………..
5. living – the cost ………………………………………………………………….
6. some friends – my brother ………………………………………………………
7. bread – the price ………………………………………………………………..
8. the baby – the pram ……………………………………………………………..
9. John and Paul – the wives ………………………………………………………
10. the men – the changing rooms …………………………………………………
11. the sea – the waves …………………………………………………………………
12. a climb – two hundred metres …………………………………………………
13. Lucy and Emily – the mother ……………………………………………………
14. the house – my father’s closest friend …………………………………………
15. the president – the decision ……………………………………………………
16. my physics professor – the report ……………………………………………
17. the park – the playground ……………………………………………………
18. the Smiths – the car ……………………………………………………………
19. my mother-in-law – the garden ………………………………………………...
D) Answer the questions:

1. Is this your car?
   No, ……….. it isn’t. It’s Ben’s. .................................................. (Ben)

2. Are these your boots?
   No, ......................................................................................... (Jim)

3. Are these Sue’s glasses?
   No, ......................................................................................... (Eric)

4. Is that your dress?
   No, ......................................................................................... (Karen)

5. Is this my jacket?
   No, ......................................................................................... (Mr. Jackson)

6. Are these your shirts?
   No, ......................................................................................... (Mike)

7. Is that your grandmother’s dress?
   No, ......................................................................................... (my mother)
WORKSHEET 58

SUBJECT: SO do I / NEITHER do I

A) Use SO / NEITHER Auxiliary verb + Subject:

1. I’m feeling tired. ………. So am I ……………
2. I don’t like eggs. ………………………
3. I need a holiday. ………………………
4. I don’t like milk. ………………………
5. I couldn’t get up this morning. …………………
6. I’d love a cup of tea. ………………………
7. I’ve never been to Africa. …………………
8. I was ill yesterday. ………………………
9. I should smoke less. ………………………
10. I spent the whole evening watching television …………………
11. I didn’t know that Ann was in hospital. …………………

B) Felix has just met Vicky at a party. They are finding out that they have a lot in common. Put in the sentences with SO and NEITHER:

Felix : I haven’t been to a party for ages.
Vicky: ….. Neither have I. ………………… I hate crowded rooms.
Felix : ….. So do I. ………………… I’m not a party-goer, really.

1. Vicky: ……………………………………… I can’t make conversation.
2. Felix : ……………………………………… I’m a quiet sort of person.
5. Vicky: ……………………………………… And I would really like a good friend.
6. Felix : Oh, …………………………………

C) Look at the table and complete the sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Mike</th>
<th>Lorna</th>
<th>Paul</th>
<th>Marie</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Swimming</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tennis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycling</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chess</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Mike can swim, and ……… so can Lorna. ………
2. Marie isn’t keen on tennis, and ……… neither is Mike. ………
3. Paul doesn’t like swimming, and …………………
4. Marie has got a bike, and …………………
5. Mike can’t play chess, and …………………
6. Lorna isn’t keen on cycling, and …………………
7. Paul plays tennis, and …………………
8. Marie is a chess player, and …………………
A) Complete the sentences. Use ENOUGH with one of these words:

- big
- eat
- fruit
- loud
- old
- practise
- sugar
- time
- tired

1. A: “Is there … enough sugar … in your coffee?”
   B: “Yes, thank you.”
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it … loud enough … for you?
3. He can leave school if he wants – he’s ……………………
4. Did you have ……………………… to answer all the questions in the exam?
5. This house isn’t ……………………… for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn’t ……………………………
7. You don’t eat ………………………………… . You should eat more – it’s good for you.
8. It’s late but I don’t want to go to bed now. I’m not ……………………………
9. Lisa isn’t a very good tennis player because she doesn’t ……………………………

B) Complete the sentences. Use ENOUGH with the words in brackets:

1. We haven’t got ……… enough money to buy ……… a car.                             (money / buy)
2. This knife isn’t …………………………………… tomatoes.                      (sharp / cut)
3. The water wasn’t ………………………………….. a bath.                          (warm / have)
4. Have we got ………………………………………. sandwiches?                 (bread / make)
5. We played well but not ……………………………… the game.                  (well / win)
6. I don’t have ………………………………………. newspaper.                    (time / read)

C) Put in TOO or ENOUGH:

1. You’re always at home. You don’t go out …. enough. ……
2. I can’t wait for them. I haven’t got …………………. time.
4. A: Did you have ………………… to eat?
   B: Yes, thank you.
5. You don’t eat …………………. vegetables. You should eat more.
6. I don’t like the weather here. It’s ………………………………… cold.
7. The radio isn’t loud …………………………………. Can you turn it up, please?
8. She speaks ………………………………… fast for me to understand.
9. Don’t buy that coat. It’s nice but it isn’t long ……………………………
10. He can’t reach the shelf. He isn’t tall ……………………………

D) Complete the sentences. Use TOO or ENOUGH with the words in brackets:

1. I couldn’t work. I……… was too tired. …………. (tired)
2. Can you turn the radio up, please? It ……… isn’t loud enough. …………. (loud)
3. I don’t want to walk home. It’s …………………………………….. (far)
4. Don’t buy anything in that shop. It ……………………………………. (expensive)
5. You can’t put all your things in this bag. It …………………………. (big)
6. I couldn’t do the exercise. It …………………………………. (difficult)
7. Your work needs to be better. It …………………………………. (good)
8. I can’t talk to you now. I ………………………………… . (busy)
9. I thought the film was boring. It ………………………………… . (long)

E) Complete the sentences. Use TOO (+adj.) + TO (do something):

1. (I’m not going out / cold) …….. It’s too cold to go out. ……………
2. (I’m not going to bed / early) It’s ………………………………………
3. (they’re not getting married / young) They’re …………………………………
4. (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) It’s …………………………………
5. (don’t phone Ann now / late) It’s ………………………………………
6. (I didn’t say anything / surprised) I was ………………………………………
A) Rewrite the following sentences:

1. **Perhaps** I will get a high mark.
   I ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

2. **Let’s** go to the cinema tonight.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

3. **The last time** she phoned me was three months **ago**.
   She ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

4. **No** school is **more successful than** Hill School.
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

5. **Don’t** use this pen.
   You ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

6. They **grew** the best vegetables.
   The best vegetables ……………………………………………………………………………………………

7. The children were happy. They saw Micky Mouse. (so)
   The children ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

8. He’ll play with his friends. At first he’ll finish watering the flowers. (Before)
   ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

9. There is **nobody** at the door.
   There is ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

10. **It is a month** since I visited them.
    ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

11. It is **necessary** for him to go there.
    He ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

12. **It is possible** that they’ll return on Monday.
    They ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

13. You **aren’t allowed** to park here.
    You mustn’t park here.

14. There **isn’t much** coffee in the cup.
    There is ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

15. **Do you want** to go skiing with me?
    Would ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

16. John’s marks are **worse** than Jane’s.
    Jane’s ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

17. **Was it necessary** for you to check?
    ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

18. I have never eaten **such a bad pie** before.
    This is ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

19. He knows **how to play** the piano.
    He ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

20. There **can’t be a more popular singer** than Madonna.
    Madonna is ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

21. My mother **doesn’t let me go** to bed late.
    I’m not ………………………………………………………………………………………………………

22. There **aren’t many** oranges in the fridge.
    There are ………………………………………………………………………………………………………
23. I **would like** to buy a new dress.
   I …………………………………………………………………………
24. *Why don’t we go* to the cinema?
   ………………………………………………………………………….
25. I **advise** you to make a surprise for him.
   You ………………………………………………………………………
26. *It is forbidden* to walk on the railway.
   You ………………………………………………………………………
27. I don’t know the boys. They are **fighting** in the street. (gerund)
   I don’t ………………………………………………………………………
28. I **prefer to drive rather than** travel by train.
   I ………………………………………………………………………
29. We **had better** stop for petrol soon. The tank is almost empty.
   We ………………………………………………………………………
30. *Because* it was raining a lot, we didn’t go out.
   …………………………………………………………………………..
31. *Although* the traffic was bad, I arrived on time.
   ………………………………………………………………………….